INTERNATIONAL STANDARD

ISO/IEC 11172-1

First edition
1993-08-01

Information technology — Coding of moving pictures and associated audio for digital storage media at up to about 1,5 Mbit/s —

Part 1: Systems

Technologies de l'information — Codage de l'image animée et du son associé pour les supports de stockage numérique jusqu'à environ 1,5 Mbit/s —

Partie 1: Systèmes

Reference number
ISO/IEC 11172-1:1993(E)

Contents

Page

Foreword

ISO (the International Organization for Standardization) and IEC (the International Electrotechnical Commission) form the specialized system for worldwide standardization. National bodies that are members of ISO or IEC participate in the development of International Standards through technical committees established by the respective organization to deal with particular fields of technical activity. ISO and IEC technical committees collaborate in fields of mutual interest. Other international organizations, governmental and non-governmental, in liaison with ISO and IEC, also take part in the work.

In the field of information technology, ISO and IEC have established a joint technical committee, ISO/IEC JTC 1. Draft International Standards adopted by the joint technical committee are circulated to national bodies for voting. Publication as an International Standard requires approval by at least 75 % of the national bodies casting a vote.

International Standard ISO/IEC 11172-1 was prepared by Joint Technical Committee ISO/IEC JTC 1, *Information technology*, Sub-Committee SC 29, *Coded representation of audio, picture, multimedia and hypermedia information.*

ISO/IEC 11172 consists of the following parts, under the general title *Information technology — Coding of moving pictures and associated audio for digital storage media at up to about 1,5 Mbit/s*:

— *Part 1: Systems*

— *Part 2: Video*

— *Part 3: Audio*

— *Part 4: Compliance testing*

Annexes A and B of this part of ISO/IEC 11172 are for information only.

Introduction

Note -- Readers interested in an overview of the MPEG Systems layer should read this Introduction and then proceed to annex A, before returning to the clauses 1 and 2. Since the system target decoder concept is referred to throughout both the normative and informative clauses of this part of ISO/IEC 11172, it may also be useful to refer to clause 2.4, and particularly 2.4.2, where the system target decoder is described.

The systems specification addresses the problem of combining one or more data streams from the video and audio parts of this International Standard with timing information to form a single stream. Once combined into a single stream, the data are in a form well suited to digital storage or transmission. The syntactical and semantic rules imposed by this systems specification enable synchronized playback without overflow or underflow of decoder buffers under a wide range of stream retrieval or receipt conditions. The scope of syntactical and semantic rules set forth in the systems specification differ: the syntactical rules apply to systems layer coding only, and do not extend to the compression layer coding of the video and audio specifications; by contrast, the semantic rules apply to the combined stream in its entirety.

The systems specification does not specify the architecture or implementation of encoder or decoders. However, bitstream properties do impose functional and performance requirements on encoders and decoders. For instance, encoders must meet minimum clock tolerance requirements. Notwithstanding this and other requirements, a considerable degree of freedom exists in the design and implementation of encoders and decoders.

A prototypical audio/video decoder system is depicted in figure 1 to illustrate the function of an ISO/IEC 11172 decoder. The architecture is not unique -- System Decoder functions including decoder timing control might equally well be distributed among elementary stream decoders and the Medium Specific Decoder -- but this figure is useful for discussion. The prototypical decoder design does not imply any normative requirement for the design of an ISO/IEC 11172 decoder. Indeed non-audio/video data is also allowed, but not shown.

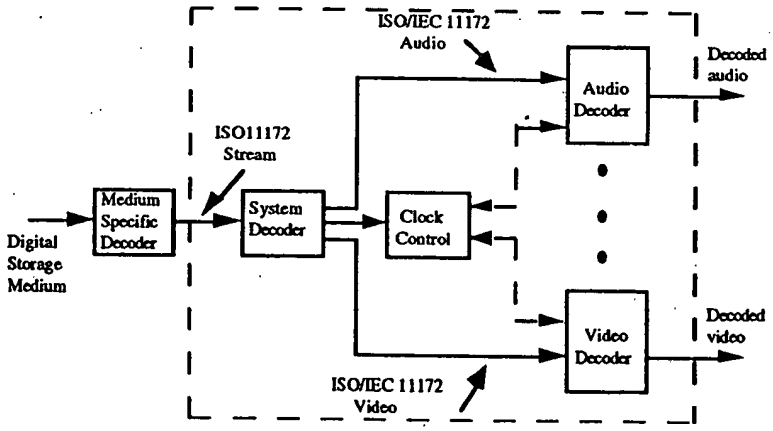


Figure 1 -- Prototypical ISO/IEC 11172 decoder

The prototypical ISO/IEC 11172 decoder shown in figure 1 is composed of System, Video, and Audio decoders conforming to Parts 1, 2, and 3, respectively, of ISO/IEC 11172. In this decoder the multiplexed coded representation of one or more audio and/or video streams is assumed to be stored on a digital storage medium (DSM), or network, in some medium-specific format. The medium specific format is not governed by this International Standard, nor is the medium-specific decoding part of the prototypical ISO/IEC 11172 decoder.

The prototypical decoder accepts as input an ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream and relies on a System Decoder to extract timing information from the stream. The System Decoder demultiplexes the stream, and the elementary streams so produced serve as inputs to Video and Audio decoders, whose outputs are decoded video and audio signals. Included in the design, but not shown in the figure, is the flow of timing information among the System Decoder, the Video and Audio Decoders, and the Medium Specific Decoder.

The Video and Audio Decoders are synchronized with each other and with the DSM using this timing information.

ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed streams are constructed in two layers: a system layer and a compression layer. The input stream to the System Decoder has a system layer wrapped about a compression layer. Input streams to the Video and Audio decoders have only the compression layer.

Operations performed by the System Decoder either apply to the entire ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream ("multiplex-wide operations"), or to individual elementary streams ("stream-specific operations"). The ISO/IEC 11172 system layer is divided into two sub-layers, one for multiplex-wide operations (the pack layer), and one for stream-specific operations (the packet layer).

0.1 Multiplex-wide operations (pack layer)

Multiplex-wide operations include the coordination of data retrieval off the DSM, the adjustment of clocks, and the management of buffers. The tasks are intimately related. If the rate of data delivery off the DSM is controllable, then DSM delivery may be adjusted so that decoder buffers neither overflow nor underflow; but if the DSM rate is not controllable, then elementary stream decoders must slave their timing to the DSM to avoid overflow or underflow.

ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed streams are composed of packs whose headers facilitate the above tasks. Pack headers specify intended times at which each byte is to enter the system decoder from the DSM, and this target arrival schedule serves as a reference for clock correction and buffer management. The schedule need not be followed exactly by decoders, but they must compensate for deviations about it.

An additional multiplex-wide operation is a decoder's ability to establish what resources are required to decode an ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream. The first pack of each ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream conveys parameters to assist decoders in this task. Included, for example, are the stream's maximum data rate and the highest number of simultaneous video channels.

0.2 Individual stream operations (packet layer)

The principal stream-specific operations are 1) demultiplexing, and 2) synchronizing playback of multiple elementary streams. These topics are discussed next.

0.2.1 Demultiplexing

On encoding, ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed streams are formed by multiplexing elementary streams. Elementary streams may include private, reserved, and padding streams in addition to ISO/IEC 11172 audio and video streams. The streams are temporally subdivided into packets, and the packets are serialized. A packet contains coded bytes from one and only one elementary stream.

Both fixed and variable packet lengths are allowed subject to constraints in 2.4.3.3 and in 2.4.5 and 2.4.6.

On decoding, demultiplexing is required to reconstitute elementary streams from the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream. This is made possible by stream_id codes in packet headers.

0.2.2 Synchronization

Synchronization among multiple streams is effected with presentation time stamps in the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream. The time stamps are in units of 90kHz. Playback of N streams is synchronized by adjusting the playback of all streams to a master time base rather than by adjusting the playback of one stream to match that of another. The master time base may be one of the N decoders' clocks, the DSM or channel clock, or it may be some external clock.

Because presentation time-stamps apply to the decoding of individual elementary streams, they reside in the packet layer. End-to-end synchronization occurs when encoders record time-stamps at capture time, when the time stamps propagate with associated coded data to decoders, and when decoders use those time-stamps to schedule presentations.

Synchronization is also possible with DSM timing time stamps in the multiplexed data stream.

0.2.3 Relation to compression layer

The packet layer is independent of the compression layer in some senses, but not in all. It is independent in the sense that packets need not start at compression layer start codes, as defined in parts 2 and 3. For example, a video packet may start at any byte in the video stream. However, time stamps encoded in packet headers apply to presentation times of compression layer constructs (namely, presentation units).

0.3 System reference decoder

Part 1 of ISO/IEC 11172 employs a "system target decoder," (STD) to provide a formalism for timing and buffering relationships. Because the STD is parameterized in terms of fields defined in ISO/IEC 11172 (for example, buffer sizes) each ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream leads to its own parameterization of the STD. It is up to encoders to ensure that bitstreams they produce will play in normal speed, forward play on corresponding STDs. Physical decoders may assume that a stream plays properly on its STD; the physical decoder must compensate for ways in which its design differs from that of the STD.

Information technology — Coding of moving pictures and associated audio for digital storage media at up to about 1,5 Mbit/s —

Part 1: Systems

Section 1: General

1.1 Scope

This part of ISO/IEC 11172 specifies the system layer of the coding. It was developed principally to support the combination of the video and audio coding methods defined in ISO/IEC 11172-2 and ISO/IEC 11172-3. The system layer supports five basic functions:

a) the synchronization of multiple compressed streams on playback,
b) the interleaving of multiple compressed streams into a single stream,
c) the initialization of buffering for playback start up,
d) continuous buffer management, and
e) time identification.

An ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed bit stream is constructed in two layers: the outermost layer is the system layer, and the innermost is the compression layer. The system layer provides the functions necessary for using one or more compressed data streams in a system. The video and audio parts of this specification define the compression coding layer for audio and video data. Coding of other types of data is not defined by the specification, but is supported by the system layer provided that the other types of data adhere to the constraints defined in clause 2.4.

1.2 Normative references

The following International Standards contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of this part of ISO/IEC 11172. At the time of publication, the editions indicated were valid. All standards are subject to revision, and parties to agreements based on this part of ISO 11172 are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the standards indicated below. Members of IEC and ISO maintain registers of currently valid International Standards.

ISO/IEC 11172-2:1993 *Information technology - Coding of moving pictures and associated audio for digital storage media at up to about 1,5 Mbit/s - Part 2: Video.*

ISO/IEC 11172-3:1993 *Information technology - Coding of moving pictures and associated audio for digital storage media at up to about 1,5 Mbit/s - Part 3 Audio.*

CCIR Recommendation 601-2 *Encoding parameters of digital television for studios.*

CCIR Report 624-4 *Characteristics of systems for monochrome and colour television.*

CCIR Recommendation 648 *Recording of audio signals.*

CCIR Report 955-2 *Sound broadcasting by satellite for portable and mobile receivers, including Annex IV Summary description of Advanced Digital System II.*

CCITT Recommendation J.17 *Pre-emphasis used on Sound-Programme Circuits.*

IEEE Draft Standard P1180/D2 1990 *Specification for the implementation of 8x 8 inverse discrete cosine transform".*

IEC publication 908:1987 *CD Digital Audio System.*

Section 2: Technical elements

2.1 Definitions

For the purposes of ISO/IEC 11172, the following definitions apply. If specific to a part, this is noted in square brackets.

2.1.1 ac coefficient [video]: Any DCT coefficient for which the frequency in one or both dimensions is non-zero.

2.1.2 access unit [system]: In the case of compressed audio an access unit is an audio access unit. In the case of compressed video an access unit is the coded representation of a picture.

2.1.3 adaptive segmentation [audio]: A subdivision of the digital representation of an audio signal in variable segments of time.

2.1.4 adaptive bit allocation [audio]: The assignment of bits to subbands in a time and frequency varying fashion according to a psychoacoustic model.

2.1.5 adaptive noise allocation [audio]: The assignment of coding noise to frequency bands in a time and frequency varying fashion according to a psychoacoustic model.

2.1.6 alias [audio]: Mirrored signal component resulting from sub-Nyquist sampling.

2.1.7 analysis filterbank [audio]: Filterbank in the encoder that transforms a broadband PCM audio signal into a set of subsampled subband samples.

2.1.8 audio access unit [audio]: For Layers I and II an audio access unit is defined as the smallest part of the encoded bitstream which can be decoded by itself, where decoded means "fully reconstructed sound". For Layer III an audio access unit is part of the bitstream that is decodable with the use of previously acquired main information.

2.1.9 audio buffer [audio]: A buffer in the system target decoder for storage of compressed audio data.

2.1.10 audio sequence [audio]: A non-interrupted series of audio frames in which the following parameters are not changed:

- ID
- Layer
- Sampling Frequency
- For Layer I and II: Bitrate index

2.1.11 backward motion vector [video]: A motion vector that is used for motion compensation from a reference picture at a later time in display order.

2.1.12 Bark [audio]: Unit of critical band rate. The Bark scale is a non-linear mapping of the frequency scale over the audio range closely corresponding with the frequency selectivity of the human ear across the band.

2.1.13 bidirectionally predictive-coded picture; B-picture [video]: A picture that is coded using motion compensated prediction from a past and/or future reference picture.

2.1.14 bitrate: The rate at which the compressed bitstream is delivered from the storage medium to the input of a decoder.

2.1.15 block companding [audio]: Normalizing of the digital representation of an audio signal within a certain time period.

2.1.16 block [video]: An 8-row by 8-column orthogonal block of pels.

2.1.17 bound [audio]: The lowest subband in which intensity stereo coding is used.

2.1.18 byte aligned: A bit in a coded bitstream is byte-aligned if its position is a multiple of 8-bits from the first bit in the stream.

2.1.19 byte: Sequence of 8-bits.

2.1.20 channel: A digital medium that stores or transports an ISO/IEC 11172 stream.

2.1.21 channel [audio]: The left and right channels of a stereo signal

2.1.22 chrominance (component) [video]: A matrix, block or single pel representing one of the two colour difference signals related to the primary colours in the manner defined in CCIR Rec 601. The symbols used for the colour difference signals are Cr and Cb.

2.1.23 coded audio bitstream [audio]: A coded representation of an audio signal as specified in ISO/IEC 11172-3.

2.1.24 coded video bitstream [video]: A coded representation of a series of one or more pictures as specified in ISO/IEC 11172-2.

2.1.25 coded order [video]: The order in which the pictures are stored and decoded. This order is not necessarily the same as the display order.

2.1.26 coded representation: A data element as represented in its encoded form.

2.1.27 coding parameters [video]: The set of user-definable parameters that characterize a coded video bitstream. Bitstreams are characterised by coding parameters. Decoders are characterised by the bitstreams that they are capable of decoding.

2.1.28 component [video]: A matrix, block or single pel from one of the three matrices (luminance and two chrominance) that make up a picture.

2.1.29 compression: Reduction in the number of bits used to represent an item of data.

2.1.30 constant bitrate coded video [video]: A compressed video bitstream with a constant average bitrate.

2.1.31 constant bitrate: Operation where the bitrate is constant from start to finish of the compressed bitstream.

2.1.32 constrained parameters [video]: The values of the set of coding parameters defined in 2.4.3.2 of ISO/IEC 11172-2.

2.1.33 constrained system parameter stream (CSPS) [system]: An ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream for which the constraints defined in 2.4.6 of this part of ISO/IEC 11172 apply.

2.1.34 CRC: Cyclic redundancy code.

2.1.35 critical band rate [audio]: Psychoacoustic function of frequency. At a given audible frequency it is proportional to the number of critical bands below that frequency. The units of the critical band rate scale are Barks.

2.1.36 critical band [audio]: Psychoacoustic measure in the spectral domain which corresponds to the frequency selectivity of the human ear. This selectivity is expressed in Bark.

2.1.37 data element: An item of data as represented before encoding and after decoding.

2.1.38 dc-coefficient [video]: The DCT coefficient for which the frequency is zero in both dimensions.

2.1.39 dc-coded picture; D-picture [video]: A picture that is coded using only information from itself. Of the DCT coefficients in the coded representation, only the dc-coefficients are present.

2.1.40 DCT coefficient: The amplitude of a specific cosine basis function.

2.1.41 decoded stream: The decoded reconstruction of a compressed bitstream.

2.1.42 decoder input buffer [video]: The first-in first-out (FIFO) buffer specified in the video buffering verifier.

2.1.43 decoder input rate [video]: The data rate specified in the video buffering verifier and encoded in the coded video bitstream.

2.1.44 decoder: An embodiment of a decoding process.

2.1.45 decoding (process): The process defined in ISO/IEC 11172 that reads an input coded bitstream and produces decoded pictures or audio samples.

2.1.46 decoding time-stamp; DTS [system]: A field that may be present in a packet header that indicates the time that an access unit is decoded in the system target decoder.

2.1.47 de-emphasis [audio]: Filtering applied to an audio signal after storage or transmission to undo a linear distortion due to emphasis.

2.1.48 dequantization [video]: The process of rescaling the quantized DCT coefficients after their representation in the bitstream has been decoded and before they are presented to the inverse DCT.

2.1.49 digital storage media; DSM: A digital storage or transmission device or system.

2.1.50 discrete cosine transform; DCT [video]: Either the forward discrete cosine transform or the inverse discrete cosine transform. The DCT is an invertible, discrete orthogonal transformation. The inverse DCT is defined in annex A of ISO/IEC 11172-2.

2.1.51 display order [video]: The order in which the decoded pictures should be displayed. Normally this is the same order in which they were presented at the input of the encoder.

2.1.52 dual channel mode [audio]: A mode, where two audio channels with independent programme contents (e.g. bilingual) are encoded within one bitstream. The coding process is the same as for the stereo mode.

2.1.53 editing: The process by which one or more compressed bitstreams are manipulated to produce a new compressed bitstream. Conforming edited bitstreams must meet the requirements defined in ISO/IEC 11172.

2.1.54 elementary stream [system]: A generic term for one of the coded video, coded audio or other coded bitstreams.

2.1.55 emphasis [audio]: Filtering applied to an audio signal before storage or transmission to improve the signal-to-noise ratio at high frequencies.

2.1.56 encoder: An embodiment of an encoding process.

2.1.57 encoding (process): A process, not specified in ISO/IEC 11172, that reads a stream of input pictures or audio samples and produces a valid coded bitstream as defined in ISO/IEC 11172.

2.1.58 entropy coding: Variable length lossless coding of the digital representation of a signal to reduce redundancy.

2.1.59 fast forward playback [video]: The process of displaying a sequence, or parts of a sequence, of pictures in display-order faster than real-time.

2.1.60 FFT: Fast Fourier Transformation. A fast algorithm for performing a discrete Fourier transform (an orthogonal transform).

2.1.61 filterbank [audio]: A set of band-pass filters covering the entire audio frequency range.

2.1.62 fixed segmentation [audio]: A subdivision of the digital representation of an audio signal into fixed segments of time.

2.1.63 forbidden: The term "forbidden" when used in the clauses defining the coded bitstream indicates that the value shall never be used. This is usually to avoid emulation of start codes.

2.1.64 forced updating [video]: The process by which macroblocks are intra-coded from time-to-time to ensure that mismatch errors between the inverse DCT processes in encoders and decoders cannot build up excessively.

2.1.65 forward motion vector [video]: A motion vector that is used for motion compensation from a reference picture at an earlier time in display order.

2.1.66 frame [audio]: A part of the audio signal that corresponds to audio PCM samples from an Audio Access Unit.

2.1.67 free format [audio]: Any bitrate other than the defined bitrates that is less than the maximum valid bitrate for each layer.

2.1.68 future reference picture [video]: The future reference picture is the reference picture that occurs at a later time than the current picture in display order.

2.1.69 granules [Layer II] [audio]: The set of 3 consecutive subband samples from all 32 subbands that are considered together before quantization. They correspond to 96 PCM samples.

2.1.70 granules [Layer III] [audio]: 576 frequency lines that carry their own side information.

2.1.71 group of pictures [video]: A series of one or more coded pictures intended to assist random access. The group of pictures is one of the layers in the coding syntax defined in ISO/IEC 11172-2.

2.1.72 Hann window [audio]: A time function applied sample-by-sample to a block of audio samples before Fourier transformation.

2.1.73 Huffman coding: A specific method for entropy coding.

2.1.74 hybrid filterbank [audio]: A serial combination of subband filterbank and MDCT.

2.1.75 IMDCT [audio]: Inverse Modified Discrete Cosine Transform.

2.1.76 intensity stereo [audio]: A method of exploiting stereo irrelevance or redundancy in stereophonic audio programmes based on retaining at high frequencies only the energy envelope of the right and left channels.

2.1.77 interlace [video]: The property of conventional television pictures where alternating lines of the picture represent different instances in time.

2.1.78 intra coding [video]: Coding of a macroblock or picture that uses information only from that macroblock or picture.

2.1.79 intra-coded picture; I-picture [video]: A picture coded using information only from itself.

2.1.80 ISO/IEC 11172 (multiplexed) stream [system]: A bitstream composed of zero or more elementary streams combined in the manner defined in this part of ISO/IEC 11172.

2.1.81 joint stereo coding [audio]: Any method that exploits stereophonic irrelevance or stereophonic redundancy.

2.1.82 joint stereo mode [audio]: A mode of the audio coding algorithm using joint stereo coding.

2.1.83 layer [audio]: One of the levels in the coding hierarchy of the audio system defined in ISO/IEC 11172-3.

2.1.84 layer [video and systems]: One of the levels in the data hierarchy of the video and system specifications defined in this part of ISO/IEC 11172 and ISO/IEC 11172-2.

2.1.85 luminance (component) [video]: A matrix, block or single pel representing a monochrome representation of the signal and related to the primary colours in the manner defined in CCIR Rec 601. The symbol used for luminance is Y.

2.1.86 macroblock [video]: The four 8 by 8 blocks of luminance data and the two corresponding 8 by 8 blocks of chrominance data coming from a 16 by 16 section of the luminance component of the picture. Macroblock is sometimes used to refer to the pel data and sometimes to the coded representation of the pel values and other data elements defined in the macroblock layer of the syntax defined in ISO/IEC 11172-2. The usage is clear from the context.

2.1.87 mapping [audio]: Conversion of an audio signal from time to frequency domain by subband filtering and/or by MDCT.

2.1.88 masking [audio]: A property of the human auditory system by which an audio signal cannot be perceived in the presence of another audio signal .

2.1.89 masking threshold [audio]: A function in frequency and time below which an audio signal cannot be perceived by the human auditory system.

2.1.90 MDCT [audio]: Modified Discrete Cosine Transform.

2.1.91 motion compensation [video]: The use of motion vectors to improve the efficiency of the prediction of pel values. The prediction uses motion vectors to provide offsets into the past and/or future reference pictures containing previously decoded pel values that are used to form the prediction error signal.

2.1.92 motion estimation [video]: The process of estimating motion vectors during the encoding process.

2.1.93 motion vector [video]: A two-dimensional vector used for motion compensation that provides an offset from the coordinate position in the current picture to the coordinates in a reference picture.

2.1.94 MS stereo [audio]: A method of exploiting stereo irrelevance or redundancy in stereophonic audio programmes based on coding the sum and difference signal instead of the left and right channels.

2.1.95 non-intra coding [video]: Coding of a macroblock or picture that uses information both from itself and from macroblocks and pictures occurring at other times.

2.1.96 non-tonal component [audio]: A noise-like component of an audio signal.

2.1.97 Nyquist sampling: Sampling at or above twice the maximum bandwidth of a signal.

2.1.98 pack [system]: A pack consists of a pack header followed by one or more packets. It is a layer in the system coding syntax described in this part of ISO/IEC 11172.

2.1.99 packet data [system]: Contiguous bytes of data from an elementary stream present in a packet.

2.1.100 packet header [system]: The data structure used to convey information about the elementary stream data contained in the packet data.

2.1.101 packet [system]: A packet consists of a header followed by a number of contiguous bytes from an elementary data stream. It is a layer in the system coding syntax described in this part of ISO/IEC 11172.

2.1.102 padding [audio]: A method to adjust the average length in time of an audio frame to the duration of the corresponding PCM samples, by conditionally adding a slot to the audio frame.

2.1.103 past reference picture [video]: The past reference picture is the reference picture that occurs at an earlier time than the current picture in display order.

2.1.104 pel aspect ratio [video]: The ratio of the nominal vertical height of pel on the display to its nominal horizontal width.

2.1.105 pel [video]: Picture element.

2.1.106 picture period [video]: The reciprocal of the picture rate.

2.1.107 picture rate [video]: The nominal rate at which pictures should be output from the decoding process.

2.1.108 picture [video]: Source, coded or reconstructed image data. A source or reconstructed picture consists of three rectangular matrices of 8-bit numbers representing the luminance and two chrominance signals. The Picture layer is one of the layers in the coding syntax defined in ISO/IEC 11172-2. Note that the term "picture" is always used in ISO/IEC 11172 in preference to the terms field or frame.

2.1.109 polyphase filterbank [audio]: A set of equal bandwidth filters with special phase interrelationships, allowing for an efficient implementation of the filterbank.

2.1.110 prediction [video]: The use of a predictor to provide an estimate of the pel value or data element currently being decoded.

2.1.111 predictive-coded picture; P-picture [video]: A picture that is coded using motion compensated prediction from the past reference picture.

2.1.112 prediction error [video]: The difference between the actual value of a pel or data element and its predictor.

2.1.113 predictor [video]: A linear combination of previously decoded pel values or data elements.

2.1.114 presentation time-stamp; PTS [system]: A field that may be present in a packet header that indicates the time that a presentation unit is presented in the system target decoder.

2.1.115 presentation unit; PU [system]: A decoded audio access unit or a decoded picture.

2.1.116 psychoacoustic model [audio]: A mathematical model of the masking behaviour of the human auditory system.

2.1.117 quantization matrix [video]: A set of sixty-four 8-bit values used by the dequantizer.

2.1.118 quantized DCT coefficients [video]: DCT coefficients before dequantization. A variable length coded representation of quantized DCT coefficients is stored as part of the compressed video bitstream.

2.1.119 quantizer scalefactor [video]: A data element represented in the bitstream and used by the decoding process to scale the dequantization.

2.1.120 random access: The process of beginning to read and decode the coded bitstream at an arbitrary point.

2.1.121 reference picture [video]: Reference pictures are the nearest adjacent I- or P-pictures to the current picture in display order.

2.1.122 reorder buffer [video]: A buffer in the system target decoder for storage of a reconstructed I-picture or a reconstructed P-picture.

2.1.123 requantization [audio]: Decoding of coded subband samples in order to recover the original quantized values.

2.1.124 reserved: The term "reserved" when used in the clauses defining the coded bitstream indicates that the value may be used in the future for ISO/IEC defined extensions.

2.1.125 reverse playback [video]: The process of displaying the picture sequence in the reverse of display order.

2.1.126 scalefactor band [audio]: A set of frequency lines in Layer III which are scaled by one scalefactor.

2.1.127 scalefactor index [audio]: A numerical code for a scalefactor.

2.1.128 scalefactor [audio]: Factor by which a set of values is scaled before quantization.

2.1.129 sequence header [video]: A block of data in the coded bitstream containing the coded representation of a number of data elements.

2.1.130 side information: Information in the bitstream necessary for controlling the decoder.

2.1.131 skipped macroblock [video]: A macroblock for which no data are stored.

2.1.132 slice [video]: A series of macroblocks. It is one of the layers of the coding syntax defined in ISO/IEC 11172-2.

2.1.133 slot [audio]: A slot is an elementary part in the bitstream. In Layer I a slot equals four bytes, in Layers II and III one byte.

2.1.134 source stream: A single non-multiplexed stream of samples before compression coding.

2.1.135 spreading function [audio]: A function that describes the frequency spread of masking.

2.1.136 start codes [system and video]: 32-bit codes embedded in that coded bitstream that are unique. They are used for several purposes including identifying some of the layers in the coding syntax.

2.1.137 STD input buffer [system]: A first-in first-out buffer at the input of the system target decoder for storage of compressed data from elementary streams before decoding.

2.1.138 stereo mode [audio]: Mode, where two audio channels which form a stereo pair (left and right) are encoded within one bitstream. The coding process is the same as for the dual channel mode.

2.1.139 stuffing (bits); stuffing (bytes) : Code-words that may be inserted into the compressed bitstream that are discarded in the decoding process. Their purpose is to increase the bitrate of the stream.

2.1.140 subband [audio]: Subdivision of the audio frequency band.

2.1.141 subband filterbank [audio]: A set of band filters covering the entire audio frequency range. In ISO/IEC 11172-3 the subband filterbank is a polyphase filterbank.

2.1.142 subband samples [audio]: The subband filterbank within the audio encoder creates a filtered and subsampled representation of the input audio stream. The filtered samples are called subband samples. From 384 time-consecutive input audio samples, 12 time-consecutive subband samples are generated within each of the 32 subbands.

2.1.143 syncword [audio]: A 12-bit code embedded in the audio bitstream that identifies the start of a frame.

2.1.144 synthesis filterbank [audio]: Filterbank in the decoder that reconstructs a PCM audio signal from subband samples.

2.1.145 system header [system]: The system header is a data structure defined in this part of ISO/IEC 11172 that carries information summarising the system characteristics of the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream.

2.1.146 system target decoder; STD [system]: A hypothetical reference model of a decoding process used to describe the semantics of an ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed bitstream.

2.1.147 time-stamp [system]: A term that indicates the time of an event.

2.1.148 triplet [audio]: A set of 3 consecutive subband samples from one subband. A triplet from each of the 32 subbands forms a granule.

2.1.149 tonal component [audio]: A sinusoid-like component of an audio signal.

2.1.150 variable bitrate: Operation where the bitrate varies with time during the decoding of a compressed bitstream.

2.1.151 variable length coding; VLC: A reversible procedure for coding that assigns shorter code-words to frequent events and longer code-words to less frequent events.

2.1.152 video buffering verifier; VBV [video]: A hypothetical decoder that is conceptually connected to the output of the encoder. Its purpose is to provide a constraint on the variability of the data rate that an encoder or editing process may produce.

2.1.153 video sequence [video]: A series of one or more groups of pictures. It is one of the layers of the coding syntax defined in ISO/IEC 11172-2.

2.1.154 zig-zag scanning order [video]: A specific sequential ordering of the DCT coefficients from (approximately) the lowest spatial frequency to the highest.

2.2 Symbols and abbreviations

The mathematical operators used to describe this International Standard are similar to those used in the C programming language. However, integer division with truncation and rounding are specifically defined. The bitwise operators are defined assuming twos-complement representation of integers. Numbering and counting loops generally begin from zero.

2.2.1 Arithmetic operators

+	Addition.
-	Subtraction (as a binary operator) or negation (as a unary operator).
++	Increment.
--	Decrement.
*	Multiplication.
^	Power.
/	Integer division with truncation of the result toward zero. For example, 7/4 and -7/-4 are truncated to 1 and -7/4 and 7/-4 are truncated to -1.
//	Integer division with rounding to the nearest integer. Half-integer values are rounded away from zero unless otherwise specified. For example 3//2 is rounded to 2, and -3//2 is rounded to -2.
DIV	Integer division with truncation of the result towards-∞.
| |	Absolute value. $\lvert x \rvert = x$ when $x > 0$ $\lvert x \rvert = 0$ when $x == 0$ $\lvert x \rvert = -x$ when $x < 0$
%	Modulus operator. Defined only for positive numbers.
Sign( )	Sign(x) = 1 $x > 0$ 0 $x == 0$ -1 $x < 0$
NINT ( )	Nearest integer operator. Returns the nearest integer value to the real-valued argument. Half-integer values are rounded away from zero.
sin	Sine.
cos	Cosine.
exp	Exponential.
$\surd$	Square root.
$\log_{10}$	Logarithm to base ten.
$\log_e$	Logarithm to base e.
$\log_2$	Logarithm to base 2.

2.2.2 Logical operators

||	Logical OR.
&&	Logical AND.

! Logical NOT.

2.2.3 Relational operators

> Greater than.

>= Greater than or equal to.

< Less than.

<= Less than or equal to.

== Equal to.

!= Not equal to.

max [,...,] the maximum value in the argument list.

min [,...,] the minimum value in the argument list.

2.2.4 Bitwise operators

A twos complement number representation is assumed where the bitwise operators are used.

& AND.

| OR.

>> Shift right with sign extension.

<< Shift left with zero fill.

2.2.5 Assignment

= Assignment operator.

2.2.6 Mnemonics

The following mnemonics are defined to describe the different data types used in the coded bit-stream.

bslbf Bit string, left bit first, where "left" is the order in which bit strings are written in ISO/IEC 11172. Bit strings are written as a string of 1s and 0s within single quote marks, e.g. '1000 0001'. Blanks within a bit string are for ease of reading and have no significance.

ch Channel. If ch has the value 0, the left channel of a stereo signal or the first of two independent signals is indicated. (Audio)

nch Number of channels; equal to 1 for single_channel mode, 2 in other modes. (Audio)

gr Granule of 3 * 32 subband samples in audio Layer II, 18 * 32 sub-band samples in audio Layer III. (Audio)

main_data The main_data portion of the bitstream contains the scalefactors, Huffman encoded data, and ancillary information. (Audio)

main_data_beg The location in the bitstream of the beginning of the main_data for the frame. The location is equal to the ending location of the previous frame's main_data plus one bit. It is calculated from the main_data_end value of the previous frame. (Audio)

part2_length The number of main_data bits used for scalefactors. (Audio)

rpchof	Remainder polynomial coefficients, highest order first. (Audio)
sb	Subband. (Audio)
sblimit	The number of the lowest sub-band for which no bits are allocated. (Audio)
scfsi	Scalefactor selection information. (Audio)
switch_point_l	Number of scalefactor band (long block scalefactor band) from which point on window switching is used. (Audio)
switch_point_s	Number of scalefactor band (short block scalefactor band) from which point on window switching is used. (Audio)
uimsbf	Unsigned integer, most significant bit first.
vlclbf	Variable length code, left bit first, where "left" refers to the order in which the VLC codes are written.
window	Number of the actual time slot in case of block_type==2, $0 \leq$ window ≤ 2. (Audio)

The byte order of multi-byte words is most significant byte first.

2.2.7 Constants

π	3,14159265358...
e	2,71828182845...

2.3 Method of describing bit stream syntax

The bit stream retrieved by the decoder is described in 2.4.3. Each data item in the bit stream is in bold type. It is described by its name, its length in bits, and a mnemonic for its type and order of transmission.

The action caused by a decoded data element in a bit stream depends on the value of that data element and on data elements previously decoded. The decoding of the data elements and definition of the state variables used in their decoding are described in 2.4.4. The following constructs are used to express the conditions when data elements are present, and are in normal type:

Note this syntax uses the 'C'-code convention that a variable or expression evaluating to a non-zero value is equivalent to a condition that is true.

while (condition) {
  data_element
  . . .
}
	If the condition is true, then the group of data elements occurs next in the data stream. This repeats until the condition is not true.

do {
  data_element
  . . .
} while (condition)
	The data element always occurs at least once.
	The data element is repeated until the condition is not true.

if (condition) {
  data_element
  . . .
}
else {
  data_element
  . . .
}
	If the condition is true, then the first group of data elements occurs next in the data stream.
	If the condition is not true, then the second group of data elements occurs next in the data stream.

for (expr1; expr2; expr3) {
  data_element
  . . .
}
	expr1 is an expression specifying the initialization of the loop. Normally it specifies the initial state of the counter. expr2 is a condition specifying a test made before each iteration of the loop. The loop terminates when the condition is not true. expr3 is an expression that is performed at the end of each iteration of the loop, normally it increments a counter.

Note that the most common usage of this construct is as follows:

for (i = 0; i < n; i++) {
  data_element
  . . .
}
	The group of data elements occurs n times. Conditional constructs within the group of data elements may depend on the value of the loop control variable i, which is set to zero for the first occurrence, incremented to one for the second occurrence, and so forth.

As noted, the group of data elements may contain nested conditional constructs. For compactness, the { } may be omitted when only one data element follows.

data_element []	data_element [] is an array of data. The number of data elements is indicated by the context.
data_element [n]	data_element [n] is the n+1th element of an array of data.
data_element [m][n]	data_element [m][n] is the m+1,n+1 th element of a two-dimensional array of data.
data_element [l][m][n]	data_element [l][m][n] is the l+1,m+1,n+1 th element of a three-dimensional array of data.
data_element [m..n]	is the inclusive range of bits between bit m and bit n in the data_element.

While the syntax is expressed in procedural terms, it should not be assumed that 2.4.3 implements a satisfactory decoding procedure. In particular, it defines a correct and error-free input bitstream. Actual decoders must include a means to look for start codes in order to begin decoding correctly, and to identify errors, erasures or insertions while decoding. The methods to identify these situations, and the actions to be taken, are not standardized.

Definition of bytealigned function

The function bytealigned () returns 1 if the current position is on a byte boundary, that is the next bit in the bit stream is the first bit in a byte. Otherwise it returns 0.

Definition of nextbits function

The function nextbits () permits comparison of a bit string with the next bits to be decoded in the bit stream.

Definition of next_start_code function

The next_start_code function removes any zero bit and zero byte stuffing and locates the next start code.

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
next_start_code() {		
while (!bytealigned())		
zero_bit	1	"0"
while (nextbits() != '0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001')		
zero_byte	8	"00000000"
}		

This function checks whether the current position is byte aligned. If it is not, zero stuffing bits are present. After that any number of zero bytes may be present before the start-code. Therefore start-codes are always byte aligned and may be preceded by any number of zero stuffing bits.

2.4 Requirements

2.4.1 Coding structure and parameters

The system coding layer allows one or more elementary streams to be combined into a single stream. Data from each elementary stream are multiplexed and encoded together with information that allows elementary streams to be replayed in synchronism.

ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream

An ISO/IEC 11172 stream consists of one or more elementary streams multiplexed together. Each elementary stream consists of access units, which are the coded representation of presentation units. The presentation unit for a video elementary stream is a picture. The corresponding access unit includes all the coded data for the picture. The access unit containing the first coded picture of a group of pictures also includes any preceding data from that group of pictures, as defined in 2.4.2.4 in ISO/IEC 11172-2, starting with the group_start_code. The access unit containing the first coded picture after a sequence header, as defined in 2.4.2.3 in part 2, also includes that sequence header. The sequence_end_code is included in the access unit containing the last coded picture of a sequence. (See 2.4.2.2 in ISO/IEC 11172-2 for the definition of the sequence_end_code). The presentation unit for an audio elementary stream is the set of samples that corresponds to samples from an audio frame (see 2.4.3.1, 2.4.2.1, and 2.4.2.2 in ISO/IEC 11172-3 for the definition of an audio frame).

Data from elementary streams is stored in packets. A packet consists of a packet header followed by packet data. The packet header begins with a 32-bit start-code that also identifies the stream to which the packet data belongs. The packet header may contain decoding and/or presentation time-stamps (DTS and PTS) that refer to the first access unit that commences in the packet. The packet data contains a variable number of contiguous bytes from one elementary stream.

Packets are organised in packs. A pack commences with a pack header and is followed by zero or more packets. The pack header begins with a 32-bit start-code. The pack header is used to store timing and bitrate information.

The stream begins with a system header that optionally may be repeated. The system header carries a summary of the system parameters defined in the stream.

2.4.2 System target decoder

The semantics of the multiplexed stream specified in 2.4.4 and the constraints on these semantics specified in 2.4.5 require exact definitions of decoding events and the times at which these events occur. The definitions needed are set out in this International Standard using a hypothetical decoder known as the system target decoder (STD).

The STD is a conceptual model used to define these terms precisely and to model the decoding process during the construction of ISO/IEC 11172 streams. The STD is defined only for this purpose. Neither the architecture of the STD nor the timing described precludes uninterrupted, synchronized play-back of ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed streams from a variety of decoders with different architectures or timing schedules.

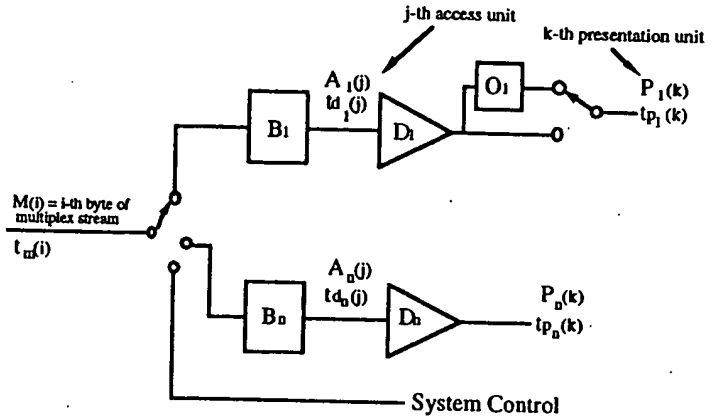


Figure 2 -- Diagram of system target decoder

Notation

The following notation is used to describe the system target decoder and is partially illustrated in figure 2.

i, i' are indices to bytes in the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream. The first byte has index 0.

j is an index to access units in the elementary streams.

k, k',k" are indices to presentation units in the elementary streams.

n is an index to the elementary streams.

M(i) is the i^{th} byte in the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream.

tm(i) indicates the time in seconds at which the i^{th} byte of the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream enters the system target decoder. The value tm(0) is an arbitrary constant.

SCR(i) is the time encoded in the SCR field measured in units of the 90 kHz system clock where i is the byte index of the final byte of the SCR field.

$A_n(j)$ is the j^{th} access unit in elementary stream n. Note that access units are indexed in decoding order.

$td_n(j)$ is the decoding time, measured in seconds, in the system target decoder of the j^{th} access unit in elementary stream n.

$P_n(k)$ is the k^{th} presentation unit in elementary stream n.

$tp_n(k)$ is the presentation time, measured in seconds, in the system target decoder of the k^{th} presentation unit in elementary stream n.

t is time measured in seconds.

$F_n(t)$ is the fullness, measured in bytes, of the system target decoder input buffer for elementary stream n at time t.

B_n is the input buffer in the system target decoder for elementary stream n.

BS_n is the size of the system target decoder input buffer, measured in bytes, for elementary stream n.

D_n is the decoder for elementary stream n.

O_n is the reorder buffer for elementary stream n.

System Clock Frequency

Timing information is carried by several data fields defined in 2.4.3 and 2.4.4. This information is coded as the sampled value of a system clock.

The value of the system clock frequency is measured in hertz and shall meet the following constraints:

$$90\,000 - 4{,}5 <= \text{system\_clock\_frequency} <= 90\,000 + 4{,}5$$

$$\text{rate of change of system\_clock\_frequency with time} <= 250 * 10^{-6} \text{ Hz/s}$$

The notation "system_clock_frequency" is used in several places in this part of ISO/IEC 11172 to refer to the frequency of a clock meeting these requirements. For notational convenience, equations in which SCR, PTS, or DTS appear lead to values of time which are accurate to some integral multiple of (2^33/system_clock_frequency). This is due to the 33-bit encoding of timing information.

Input to the System Target Decoder

Data from the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream enters the system target decoder. The i^{th} byte, M(i), enters at time tm(i). The time at which this byte enters the system target decoder can be recovered from the input stream by decoding the input system clock reference (SCR) fields encoded in the pack header. The value encoded in the SCR(i') field indicates time tm(i'), where i' refers to the last byte of the SCR field, M(i').

Specifically:

$$SCR(i') = NINT(\text{system\_clock\_frequency} * tm(i')) \,\%\, 2^{33}$$

The input arrival time, tm(i), for all other bytes shall be constructed from SCR(i') and the rate at which data arrive, where the arrival rate within each pack is the value represented in the mux_rate field in that pack's header (see 2.4.3.2 and 2.4.4.2).

$$tm(i) = \frac{SCR(i')}{\text{system\_clock\_frequency}} + \frac{i - i'}{(\text{mux\_rate} * 50)}$$

Where:

i'	is the index of the final byte of the system_clock_reference field in the pack header.
i	is the index of any byte in the pack, including the pack header.
SCR(i')	is the time encoded in the system_clock_reference field in units of the system clock.
mux_rate	is a field defined in 2.4.3.2 and 2.4.4.2.

After delivery of the last byte of a pack there may be a time interval during which no bytes are delivered to the input of the system target decoder.

Variable rate operation of the system target decoder is provided through the use of the mux_rate field, the value of which may vary from pack to pack, and the fact that the data rate entering the system target decoder may drop to zero after the last byte of one pack arrives and before the following pack header arrives.

Buffering

The packet data from elementary stream n is passed to the input buffer for stream n, B_n. Transfer of byte M(i) from the system target decoder input to B_n is instantaneous, so that byte M(i) enters the buffer for stream n, of size BS_n, at time tm(i).

Bytes present in the pack, system or packet headers of ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream but not part of the packet data (for example the SCR, DTS, PTS, packet_length fields, etc.- see 2.4.3) are not delivered to any of the buffers, but may be used to control the system.

The input buffer sizes BS_1 through BS_n are given by parameters in the syntax (see 2.4.3 and 2.4.4).

At the decoding time, $td_n(j)$, all the data for the access unit that has been in the input buffer longest ($A_n(j)$) is removed instantaneously. In the case of a video elementary stream, group of picture and sequence header data that precede the picture are removed at the same time. In the case of the first coded picture of a video sequence, any zero bit or byte stuffing immediately preceding the sequence header is removed at the same time. Note that this only applies to the first picture of a video sequence and not to additional occurences of a sequence header within a video sequence. As the access unit is removed from the buffer it is instantaneously decoded into a presentation unit.

Decoding

Elementary streams buffered in B_1 through B_n are decoded instantaneously by decoders D_1 through D_n and may be delayed in reorder buffers O_1 through O_n before being presented to the viewer at the output of the system target decoder. Reorder buffers are used only in video decoding to store I-pictures and P-pictures while the sequence of presentation units is reordered before presentation.

In the case of a video elementary stream, some access units may not be stored in presentation order. These access units will need to be reordered before presentation. In particular, an I-picture or a P-picture stored before one or more B-pictures must be delayed in the reorder buffer, O_n, of the system target decoder before being presented. It should be delayed until the next I-picture or P-picture is decoded. While it is stored in the reorder buffer, the subsequent B-pictures are decoded and presented.

If $P_n(k)$ is an I-picture or a P-picture that needs to be reordered before presentation, it is stored in O_n after being decoded and the picture previously stored in O_n is presented. Subsequent B-pictures are decoded and presented without reordering.

The time at which a presentation unit $P_n(k)$ is presented to the viewer is $tp_n(k)$. For presentation units that are not reordered, $tp_n(k)$ is equal to $td_n(j)$ since the access units are decoded instantaneously. For presentation units that are reordered $tp_n(k)$ and $td_n(j)$ differ by the time that $P_n(k)$ is delayed in the reorder buffer, which is a multiple of the nominal picture period.

Subclause 2.4.1 of ISO/IEC 11172-2 explains reodering of video pictures in greater detail.

Presentation

The function of a decoding system is to reconstruct presentation units from compressed data and to present them in a synchronized sequence at the correct presentation times. Although real audio and visual presentation devices generally have finite and different delays and may have additional delays imposed by post-processing or output functions, the system target decoder models these delays as zero.

In the system target decoder the display of a video presentation unit (a picture) occurs instantaneously at its presentation time, $tp_n(k)$.

In the system target decoder the output of an audio presentation unit starts at its presentation time, $tp_n(k)$, when the decoder instantaneously presents the first sample. Subsequent samples in the presentation unit are presented in sequence at the audio sampling rate.

2.4.3 Specification of the system stream syntax

The following syntax describes a stream of bytes.

2.4.3.1 ISO/IEC 11172 Layer

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
iso11172_stream() {		
do {		
pack()		
} while (nextbits() == pack_start_code)		
iso_11172_end_code	**32**	**bslbf**
}		

2.4.3.2 Pack Layer

Pack

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
pack() {		
pack_start_code	**32**	**bslbf**
'0010'	**4**	**bslbf**
system_clock_reference [32..30]	**3**	**bslbf**
marker_bit	**1**	**bslbf**
system_clock_reference [29..15]	**15**	**bslbf**
marker_bit	**1**	**bslbf**
system_clock_reference [14..0]	**15**	**bslbf**
marker_bit	**1**	**bslbf**
marker_bit	**1**	**bslbf**
mux_rate	**22**	**uimsbf**
marker_bit	**1**	**bslbf**
if (nextbits() == system_header_start_code)		
system_header ()		
while (nextbits() == packet_start_code_prefix)		
packet()		
}		

System header

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
system_header () {		
system_header_start_code	32	bslbf
header_length	16	uimsbf
marker_bit	1	bslbf
rate_bound	22	uimsbf
marker_bit	1	bslbf
audio_bound	6	uimsbf
fixed_flag	1	bslbf
CSPS_flag	1	bslbf
system_audio_lock_flag	1	bslbf
system_video_lock_flag	1	bslbf
marker_bit	1	bslbf
video_bound	5	uimsbf
reserved_byte	8	bslbf
while (nextbits () == '1') {		
stream_id	8	uimsbf
'11'	2	bslbf
STD_buffer_bound_scale	1	bslbf
STD_buffer_size_bound	13	uimsbf
}		
}		

2.4.3.3 Packet Layer

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
packet() {		
packet_start_code_prefix	**24**	**bslbf**
stream_id	**8**	**uimsbf**
packet_length	**16**	**uimsbf**
if (stream_id != private_stream_2) {		
while (nextbits() == '1111 1111')		
stuffing_byte	**8**	**bslbf**
if (nextbits () == '01') {		
'01'	**2**	**bslbf**
STD_buffer_scale	**1**	**bslbf**
STD_buffer_size	**13**	**uimsbf**
}		
if (nextbits() == '0010') {		
'0010'	**4**	**bslbf**
presentation_time_stamp[32..30]	**3**	**bslbf**
marker_bit	**1**	**bslbf**
presentation_time_stamp[29..15]	**15**	**bslbf**
marker_bit	**1**	**bslbf**
presentation_time_stamp[14..0]	**15**	**bslbf**
marker_bit	**1**	**bslbf**
}		
else if (nextbits() == '0011') {		
'0011'	**4**	**bslbf**
presentation_time_stamp[32..30]	**3**	**bslbf**
marker_bit	**1**	**bslbf**
presentation_time_stamp[29..15]	**15**	**bslbf**
marker_bit	**1**	**bslbf**
presentation_time_stamp[14..0]	**15**	**bslbf**
marker_bit	**1**	**bslbf**
'0001'	**4**	**bslbf**
decoding_time_stamp[32..30]	**3**	**bslbf**
marker_bit	**1**	**bslbf**
decoding_time_stamp[29..15]	**15**	**bslbf**
marker_bit	**1**	**bslbf**
decoding_time_stamp[14..0]	**15**	**bslbf**
marker_bit	**1**	**bslbf**
}		
else		
'0000 1111'	**8**	**bslbf**
}		
for (i = 0; i < N; i++) {		
packet_data_byte	**8**	**bslbf**
}		
}		

2.4.4 Semantic definition of fields in syntax

2.4.4.1 ISO/IEC 11172 Layer

iso_11172_end_code -- The iso_11172_end_code is the bit string "0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 1011 1001" (000001B9 in hexadecimal). It terminates the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream.

2.4.4.2 Pack Layer

Pack

pack_start_code -- The pack_start_code is the bit string "0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 1011 1010" (000001BA in hexadecimal). It identifies the beginning of a pack.

system_clock_reference -- The system_clock_reference (SCR) is a 33-bit number coded in three separate fields. It indicates the intended time of arrival of the last byte of the system_clock_reference field at the input of the system target decoder. The value of the SCR is measured in the number of periods of a 90kHz system clock with a tolerance specified in 2.4.2. Using the notation of 2.4.2, the value encoded in the system_clock_reference is:

$$SCR(i) = NINT(system\_clock\_frequency * (tm(i))) \ \% \ 2^{33}$$

for i such that M(i) is the last byte of the coded system_clock_reference field.

marker_bit -- A marker_bit is a one bit field that has the value "1".

mux_rate -- This is a positive integer specifying the rate at which the system target decoder receives the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream during the pack in which it is included. The value of mux_rate is measured in units of 50 bytes/s, rounded upwards. The value zero is forbidden. The value represented in mux_rate is used to define the time of arrival of bytes at the input to the system target decoder in 2.4.2. The value encoded in the mux_rate field may vary from pack to pack in an ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream.

System Header

system_header_start_code -- The system_header_start_code is the bit string "0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 1011 1011" (000001BB in hexadecimal). It identifies the beginning of a system header.

header_length -- The header_length shall be equal to the number of bytes in the system header following the header_length field. Note that future extensions of this part of ISO/IEC 11172 may extend the system header.

rate_bound -- The rate_bound is an integer value greater than or equal to the maximum value of the mux_rate field coded in any pack of the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream. It may be used by a decoder to assess whether it is capable of decoding the entire stream.

audio_bound -- The audio_bound is an integer, in the inclusive range from 0 to 32, greater than or equal to the maximum number of ISO/IEC 11172 audio streams in the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream for which the decoding processes are simultaneously active. For the purpose of this clause, the decoding process of an MPEG audio stream is active, if the STD buffer is not empty, or if the decoded access unit is being presented in the STD model.

fixed_flag -- The fixed_flag is a one-bit flag. If its value is set to "1" fixed bitrate operation is indicated. If its value is set to "0" variable bitrate operation is indicated. During fixed bitrate operation, the value encoded in all system_clock_reference fields in the multiplexed ISO/IEC 11172 stream shall adhere to the following linear equation:

$$SCR(i) = NINT(c1 * i + c2) \ \% \ 2^{33}$$

where

- c1 is a real-valued constant valid for all i;
- c2 is a real-valued constant valid for all i;
- i is the index in the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream of the final byte of any system_clock_reference field in the stream.

CSPS_flag -- The CSPS_flag is a one-bit flag. If its value is set to "1" the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream meets the constraints defined in 2.4.6.

system_audio_lock_flag -- The system_audio_lock_flag is a one-bit flag indicating that there is a specified, constant rational relationship between the audio sampling rate and the system clock frequency in the system target decoder. Subclause 2.4.2 defines system_clock_frequency and the audio sampling rate is specified in ISO/IEC 11172-3. The system_audio_lock_flag may only be set to "1" if, for all presentation units in all audio elementary streams in the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream, the ratio of system_clock_frequency to the actual audio sampling rate, SCASR, is constant and equal to the value indicated in the following table at the nominal sampling rate indicated in the audio stream.

$$SCASR = \frac{\text{system\_clock\_frequency}}{\text{audio sample rate in the STD}}$$

The notation $\frac{X}{Y}$ denotes real division.

Nominal audio sampling frequency (kHz)	32	44,1	48
Ratio SCASR	$\frac{90\,000}{32\,000}$	$\frac{90\,000}{44\,100}$	$\frac{90\,000}{48\,000}$

system_video_lock_flag -- The system_video_lock_flag is a one-bit flag indicating that there is a specified, constant rational relationship between the video picture rate and the system clock frequency in the system target decoder. Subclause 2.4.2 defines system_clock_frequency and the video picture rate is specified in ISO/IEC 11172-2. The system_video_lock_flag may only be set to "1" if, for all presentation units in all video elementary streams in the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream, the ratio of system_clock_frequency to the actual video picture rate, SCPR, is constant and equal to the value indicated in the following table at the nominal picture rate indicated in the video stream.

$$SCPR = \frac{\text{system\_clock\_frequency}}{\text{picture rate in the STD}}$$

Nominal picture rate (Hz)	23,976	24	25	29,97	30	50	59,94	60
Ratio SCPR	$\frac{15\,015}{4}$	3 750	3 600	3 003	3 000	1 800	$\frac{3\,003}{2}$	1 500

The values of the ratio SCPR are exact. The actual picture rate differs slightly from the nominal rate in cases where the nominal rate is 23,976, 29,97, or 59,94 pictures per second.

video_bound -- The video_bound is an integer, in the inclusive range from 0 to 16, greater than or equal to the maximum number of ISO/IEC 11172 video streams in the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream for which the decoding processes are simultaneously active. For the purpose of this clause, the decoding process of an ISO/IEC 11172 video streams is active if the STD buffer is not empty, or if the decoded access unit is being presented in the STD model, or if the reorder buffer is not empty.

reserved_byte -- This byte is reserved for future use by ISO/IEC. Until otherwise specified by ISO/IEC it shall have the value "1111 1111".

stream_id -- The stream_id indicates the type and number of the stream to which the following STD_buffer_bound_scale and STD_buffer_size_bound fields refer.

If stream_id equals "1011 1000" the STD_buffer_bound_scale and STD_buffer_size_bound fields following the stream_id refer to all audio streams in the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream.

If stream_id equals "1011 1001" the STD_buffer_bound_scale and STD_buffer_size_bound fields following the stream_id refer to all video streams in the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream.

If the stream_id takes on any other value it shall be a byte value greater than or equal to "1011 1100" and shall be interpreted as referring to the stream type and number according to table 1. This table is used also to identify the stream type and number indicated by the stream_id defined in 2.4.4.3.

Table 1 -- stream_id table

stream_id	stream type
1011 1100	reserved stream
1011 1101	private_stream_1
1011 1110	padding stream
1011 1111	private_stream_2
110x xxxx	ISO/IEC 11172-3 audio stream - number xxxxx
1110 xxxx	ISO/IEC 11172-2 video stream - number xxxx
1111 xxxx	reserved data stream - number xxxx
The notation x means that the values 0 and 1 are both permitted and result in the same stream type. The stream number is given by the values taken by the x's.	

Each elementary stream present in the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream shall have its STD_buffer_bound_scale and STD_buffer_size_bound specified exactly once by this mechanism in each system header.

STD_buffer_bound_scale -- The STD_buffer_bound_scale is a one-bit field that indicates the scaling factor used to interpret the subsequent STD_buffer_size_bound field. If the preceding stream_id indicates an audio stream, STD_buffer_bound_scale shall have the value "0". If the preceding stream_id indicates a video stream, STD_buffer_bound_scale shall have the value "1". For all other stream types, the value of the STD_buffer_bound_scale may be either "1" or "0".

STD_buffer_size_bound -- The STD_buffer_size_bound is a 13 bit unsigned integer defining a value greater than or equal to the maximum system target decoder input buffer size, BS_n, over all packets for stream n in the ISO/IEC 11172 stream. If STD_buffer_bound_scale has the value "0" then STD_buffer_size_bound measures the buffer size bound in units of 128 bytes. If STD_buffer_bound_scale has the value "1" then STD_buffer_size_bound measures the buffer size bound in units of 1024 bytes. Thus:

```
if (STD_buffer_bound_scale == 0)
        BSn <= STD_buffer_size_bound * 128;
else
        BSn <= STD_buffer_size_bound * 1 024;
```

2.4.4.3 Packet Layer

packet_start_code_prefix -- The packet_start_code_prefix is a 24-bit code. Together with the stream_id that follows, it constitutes a packet start code that identifies the beginning of a packet. The packet_start_code_prefix is the bit string "0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001" (000001 in hexadecimal).

stream_id -- The stream_id specifies the type and number of the elementary stream as defined by the stream_id table, table 1 in 2.4.4.2. Each elementary stream in an ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream shall have a unique stream_id.

packet_length -- The packet_length specifies the number of bytes remaining in the packet after the packet_length field.

stuffing_byte -- This is a fixed 8-bit value equal to "1111 1111" that can be inserted by the encoder for example to meet the requirements of the digital storage medium. It is discarded by the decoder. No more than sixteen stuffing bytes shall be present in one packet header.

STD_buffer_scale -- The STD_buffer_scale is a one-bit field that indicates the scaling factor used to interpret the subsequent STD_buffer_size field. If the preceding stream_id indicates an audio stream,

STD_buffer_scale shall have the value "0". If the preceding stream_id indicates a video stream, STD_buffer_scale shall have the value "1". For all other stream types, the value may be either "1" or "0".

STD_buffer_size -- The STD_buffer_size is a 13-bit unsigned integer defining the size of the input buffer, BSn, in the system target decoder. If STD_buffer_scale has the value "0" then the STD_buffer_size measures the buffer size in units of 128 bytes. If STD_buffer_scale has the value "1" then the STD_buffer_size measures the buffer size in units of 1024 bytes. Thus:

```
if (STD_buffer_scale == 0)
        BSn = STD_buffer_size * 128;
else
        BSn = STD_buffer_size * 1024;
```

The encoded value of the STD buffer size takes effect immediately when the STD_buffer_size field is received by the MPEG system target decoder.

presentation_time_stamp -- The presentation_time_stamp (PTS) is a 33-bit number coded in three separate fields. It indicates the intended time of presentation in the system target decoder of the presentation unit that corresponds to the first access unit that commences in the packet. The value of PTS is measured in the number of periods of a 90kHz system clock with a tolerance specified in 2.4.2. Using the notation of 2.4.2 the value encoded in the presentation_time_stamp is:

$$PTS = NINT(system\_clock\_frequency * (tp_n(k))) \ \% \ 2^{33}$$

where

$tp_n(k)$ is the presentation time of presentation unit $P_n(k)$.

$P_n(k)$ is the presentation unit corresponding to the first access unit that commences in the packet data. An access unit commences in the packet if the first byte of a video picture start code or the first byte of the synchronization word of an audio frame (see ISO/IEC 11172-2 and ISO/IEC 11172-3) is present in the packet data.

If there is filtering in audio, it is assumed by the system model that filtering introduces no delay, hence the sample referred to by PTS at encoding is the same sample referred to by PTS at decoding.

decoding_time_stamp -- The decoding_time_stamp (DTS) is a 33-bit number coded in three separate fields. It indicates the intended time of decoding in the system target decoder of the first access unit that commences in the packet. The value of DTS is measured in the number of periods of a 90 kHz system clock with a tolerance specified in 2.4.2. Using the notation of 2.4.2 the value encoded in the decoding_time_stamp is:

$$DTS = NINT(system\_clock\_frequency * (td_n(j))) \ \% \ 2^{33}$$

where

$td_n(j)$ is the decoding time of access unit $A_n(j)$.

$A_n(j)$ is the first access unit that commences in the packet data. An access unit commences in the packet if the first byte of a video picture start code or the first byte of the synchronization word of an audio frame (see ISO/IEC 11172-2 and ISO/IEC 11172-3) is present in the packet data.

packet_data_byte -- packet_data_bytes shall be contiguous bytes of data from the elementary stream indicated by the packet's stream_id. The byte-order of the elementary stream shall be preserved. The number of packet_data_bytes, N, may be calculated from the packet_length field. N is equal to the value indicated in the packet_length minus the number of bytes between the last byte of the packet_length field and the first packet_data_byte.

In the case of a video stream, packet_data_bytes are coded video data as defined in ISO/IEC 11172-2. In the case of an audio stream, packet_data_bytes are coded audio data as defined in ISO/IEC 11172-3. In the case of a padding stream, packet_data_bytes consist of padding bytes. Each padding byte is a fixed bit-string with the value "1111 1111". In the case of a private stream (type 1 or type 2), packet_data_bytes are user definable and will not be defined by ISO/IEC in the future. The contents of packet_data_bytes in reserved streams may be specified in the future by ISO/IEC.

2.4.5 Restrictions on the multiplexed stream semantics

2.4.5.1 Buffer management

The ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream, M(i) in the notation described in 2.4.2, shall be constructed and tm(i) shall be chosen so that the input buffers of size BS_1 through BS_n neither overflow nor underflow in the system target decoder. That is:

$0 <= F_n(t) <= BS_n$ for all t and n

and $F_n(t) = 0$ instantaneously before t=tm(0).

$F_n(t)$ is the instantaneous fullness of STD buffer B_n.

For all ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed streams, the delay caused by system target decoder input buffering shall be less than or equal to one second. The input buffering delay is the difference in time between a byte entering the input buffer and when it is decoded.

Specifically:

$td_n(j) - tm(i) <= 1$

For all bytes M(i) contained in access unit j.

2.4.5.2 Frequency of coding the system_clock_reference

The ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream, M(i), shall be constructed so that the time interval between the final bytes of system_clock_reference fields in successive packs shall be less than or equal to 0,7 s. Thus:

$|t_m(i) - t_m(i')| <= 0{,}7$ s

for all i and i' where M(i) and M(i') are the last bytes of consecutive system_clock_reference fields.

2.4.5.3 Frequency of presentation_time_stamp coding

The ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream M(i) shall be constructed so that the maximum difference between coded presentation_time_stamps is 0,7 s. Thus

$|tp_n(k) - tp_n(k'')| <= 0{,}7$ s

for all n and all k, k'' satisfying:

1) $P_n(k)$ and $P_n(k'')$ are presentation units for which presentation_time_stamps are coded;

2) k and k'' are chosen so that there is no presentation unit, $P_n(k')$ with a coded presentation_time_stamp and with $k < k' < k''$;

3) no discontinuity (as defined in 2.4.5.4) exists in elementary stream n between $P_n(k)$ and $P_n(k'')$.

2.4.5.4 Conditional coding of time stamps

For each elementary stream of an ISO/IEC 11172 stream, the presentation_time_stamp shall be encoded in the packet in which the first access unit of that elementary stream commences. For the purposes of this clause a video access unit commences in a packet if the first byte of the picture_start_code is present in the packet data (see ISO/IEC 11172-2). An audio access unit commences in a packet if the first byte of the synchronization word of the audio frame is present in the packet data (see ISO/IEC 11172-3).

A discontinuity exists at the start of presentation unit $P_n(k)$ in an elementary stream n if the presentation time $tp_n(k)$ is greater than the largest value permissible given the specified tolerance on the system_clock_frequency. If a discontinuity exists in any elementary audio or video stream in the ISO/IEC

11172 multiplex then a presentation_time_stamp shall be encoded referring to the first access unit after each discontinuity.

Presentation_time_stamps may be present in any packet header with the following exception. If no access unit commences in the packet data, the presentation_time_stamp shall not be present in the packet header. If a presentation_time_stamp is present in a packet header it shall refer to the presentation unit corresponding to the first access unit that commences in the packet data.

A decoding_time_stamp shall appear in a packet header if and only if the following two conditions are met:

1) A presentation_time_stamp is present in the packet header.
2) The decoding time differs from the presentation time.

2.4.5.5 Frequency of coding STD_buffer_size in packet headers

The STD_buffer_scale and STD_buffer_size fields shall occur in the first packet of each elementary stream and again whenever the value changes. They may also occur in any other packet.

2.4.5.6 Coding of system header

The system header may be present in any pack, immediately following the pack header. The system header shall be present in the first pack of an ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream. The values encoded in all the system headers in the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream shall be identical.

2.4.6 Constrained system parameter stream

An ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream is a "constrained system parameters stream" (CSPS) if it conforms to the bounds specified in this clause. ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed streams are not limited to the bounds specified by the CSPS. A CSPS may be identified by means of the CSPS_flag defined in the stream header (see 2.4.3.2). The CSPS is a subset of all possible ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed streams.

Packet rate

In the CSPS, the maximum rate at which packets shall arrive at the input to the system target decoder is 300 packets per second if the value encoded in the mux_rate field is less than or equal to 5 000 000 bits/s. For higher bit-rates the CSPS packet rate is bounded by a linear relation to the value encoded in the mux_rate field.

Specifically, for all packs p in the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream,

$$NP <= (tm(i') - tm(i)) * 300 * \max\left[1, \frac{R_{max}}{5*10^6}\right]$$

where

$$R_{max} = 8 * 50 * rate\_bound \quad bits/s$$

NP is the number of packet_start_code_prefixes and system_header_start_codes between adjacent pack_start_codes or between the last pack_start_code and the iso_11172_end_code.

tm(i) is the time, measured in seconds, encoded in the system_clock_reference of pack p.

tm(i') is the time, measured in seconds, encoded in the system_clock_reference for pack p+1, immediately following pack p, or in the case of the final pack in the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream, the time of arrival of the last byte of the iso_11172_end_code.

System target decoder buffer size

In the case of a CSPS the maximum size of each input buffer in the system target decoder is bounded. Different bounds apply for video elementary streams and audio elementary streams.

In the case of a video elementary stream in a CSPS the following applies:

In 2.4.3.2 of ISO/IEC 11172-2 the horizontal picture size, horizontal_size, and the vertical picture size, vertical_size, are defined. If the values encoded in horizontal_size and vertical_size meet the constraints on the picture size specified for the constrained_parameters_flag in 2.4.3.2 of ISO/IEC 11172-2, then

$BS_n <= 46 * 1\ 024$ bytes.

For all other video elementary streams in a CSPS,

$$BS_n <= \max\left[46 * 1\ 024, \frac{R_{vmax} * 46 * 1024}{1\ 856\ 000}\right] \text{ bytes}$$

where R_{vmax} is the greatest value of video bit_rate specified or used in the elementary video stream; reference subclause 2.4.3.2 of ISO/IEC 11172-2.

In the case of an audio elementary stream in a CSPS the following applies:

$BS_n <= 4\ 096$ bytes.

Annex A

(informative)

Description of the system coding layer

A.1 Overview

This part of ISO/IEC 11172 specifies the syntax and semantics of the system layer coding of combined coded audio, video, and private data. The coding specification provides data fields and semantic constraints on the data stream to support the necessary system functions. These include the synchronized presentation of decoded information, the construction of a multiplexed stream, the management of buffers for coded data, start-up and random access, and absolute time identification.

While the specification applies to the coded bitstream, there are implications on the functions that encoders and decoders must perform and the degrees of freedom given to them.

The encoding system performs coding of audio and video data, coding of system layer information, and multiplexing. Coding the system layer information includes creating time-stamps: presentation time-stamps (PTS) and decoding time-stamps (DTS) fields are used for synchronization of audio and video. System clock reference (SCR) fields are used in conjunction with PTS and DTS fields for synchronization and buffer management. The use of a common time base, the system time-clock (STC), to unify the measurement of the timing of coded data (SCR) and the timing of the presentation of data (the PTS and DTS fields), ensures correct synchronization and buffer management.

The decoding system performs parsing and demultiplexing of the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream, the system functions listed above, and the decoding and presentation of elementary streams. The specification of the system is written in terms of an idealized reference decoder known as the system target decoder (STD). The purpose of the STD is to provide a clear, simple model of the decoding system so that the various terms can be specified unambiguously. In the case of video data the term "presentation unit" (PU) refers to decoded pictures, and in the case of audio data it refers to decoded audio frames. The term "access unit" (AU) refers to the coded representation of presentation units.

This annex explains how the system functions are provided by encoders and decoders and the degrees of freedom that are available. Clause A.2 outlines the operation of an encoding system, and clause A.3 outlines the functions of a decoder. The rationale behind constants in the normative clauses (eg 0,7 s or 90 kHz) is described in A.3.4. Clause A.4 describes a set of parameters suitable for use on CD-ROM devices, clause A.5 contains a worked example of a system bitstream, and clause A.6 illustrates the structure of the multiplex.

A.2 Encoder operations

A.2.1 Degrees of freedom

Flexibility in the system layer syntax allows a wide latitude in creating the multiplexed bitstream. Multiple elementary streams of audio, video, private and padding data can be combined in a practical way into a single stream. Two private data streams of different types are provided. One type is completely private and the other includes the syntax defined in this International Standard to support synchronization and buffer management. If more than two private data streams are needed, an unlimited number of sub-streams may be defined. Up to 32 ISO/IEC 11172-3 audio and 16 ISO/IEC 11172-2 video streams may be multiplexed simultaneously. Packs and packets (the elementary units of the multiplexed stream defined in 2.4.3.2 and 2.4.3.3) may vary in length in order to allocate different bitrates to different streams, or for other reasons. Elementary streams and multiplexed bitstreams may vary their rates from time to time, or operate at a fixed bitrate. The amount of buffering needed in the STD model decoder may be specified individually for each elementary stream. To facilitate random access, the encoding system may include frequent occurrences of the information needed to start decoding, such as SCR, PTS and system headers. Applications will be further assisted if this information is located in the data stream close to the information needed in elementary streams to start decoding (for example video sequence headers and I-Pictures - see ISO/IEC 11172-2).

The encoder has the option of following a set of specific constraints and setting the Constrained System Parameter Stream (CSPS) flag, the system_audio_lock flag, or the system_video_lock flag. These optional flags may be set independently of one another. The Constrained System Parameters are a defined sub-set of all possible system layer parameters and encoding options. Their purpose is to define a restricted set of parameters and options that can be decoded by economical decoders while being broad enough in application to gain widespread use. The system_audio_lock_flag indicates that all the audio streams have an exact relationship to the system clock frequency. The system_video_lock_flag indicates that all the video streams have an exact relationship to the system clock frequency.

A.2.2 Synchronization

This part of ISO/IEC 11172 provides for end-to-end synchronization of the complete encoding and decoding process. This function is provided through the use of time-stamps, particularly Presentation Time-stamps (PTS). This end-to-end synchronization is illustrated in figure A.1 which includes a prototypical encoder and a prototypical decoder. While these prototypical encoding and decoding systems are not normative, they illustrate the functions expected of real systems.

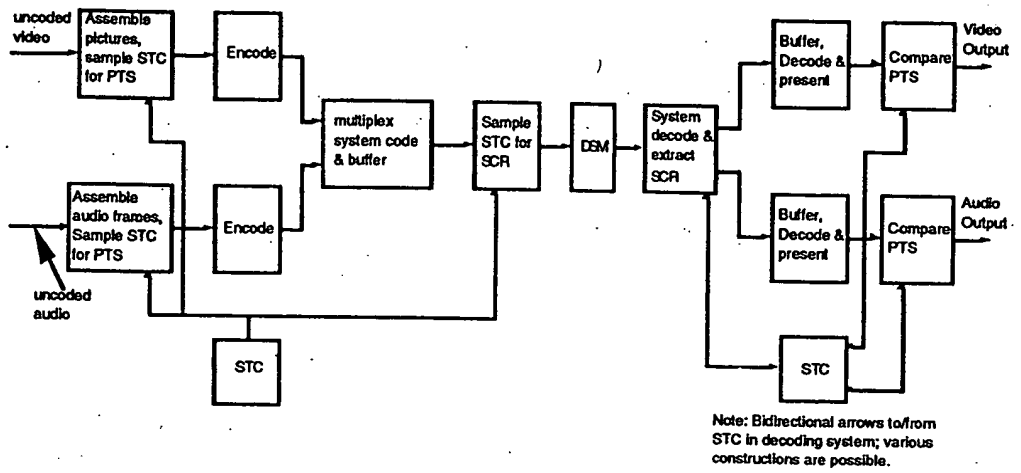


Figure A.1 -- Prototype encoder and decoder

In the prototypical encoding system, there is a single system time-clock (STC) which is available to the audio and video encoders. Audio samples entering the audio encoder are organized into audio presentation units (PU). Some, but not necessarily all, of the audio PUs have PTS values associated with them, which are samples of the STC at the time the first sample of the PU is input to the encoder. Likewise, video pictures enter the video encoder, and the STC values at the times that this occurs are used to create video PTS fields. SCR values represent the time when the last byte of the SCR field leaves the encoder.

This part of ISO/IEC 11172 specifies the encoder and decoder functions in terms of a reference decoder model known as the system target decoder (STD). In this model, video pictures and audio presentation units are presented to the user instantaneously. Actual *decoders* will generally introduce post-processing and presentation delays. These decoding delays should not be compensated by real *encoders*. Real encoders must generate bitstreams that play correctly on the idealised STD. Doing this may involve, for instance, choosing the value of the PTS at the time corresponding to the middle of a raster-scanned picture. Such an offset is acceptable providing that it is constant, does not introduce jitter into the sequence of PTS values, and the constraints on the bitstream buffering are respected. The delays that occur in any specific, real decoder must be compensated in that decoder, not the encoder.

SCR and PTS fields, and DTS where required, must be inserted by the encoder at intervals not exceeding 0,7 s as measured by the values contained in the fields. The time interval refers to coded data time for SCR fields, and presentation time for PTS and DTS fields. These fields need not be periodic, and they may be encoded more frequently than the minimum time specified.

Because clock frequencies generally deviate from their nominal values, the use of independent clocks for the generation of PTS, DTS and SCR fields would result in synchronization or buffer management problems. Therefore all the PTS, DTS and SCR fields in the multiplexed stream must be samples of the same STC or have values that are equivalent to those which would have been obtained from a single clock. It is not

permissible, for example, to use independent clocks to produce the PTS and SCR fields in the various streams. This requirement is specified via the definition of the "system_clock_frequency" in the definitions of PTS, DTS, and SCR.

While there is a specification for the frequency tolerance of the "system_clock_frequency" function used to create the time-stamps, there are no explicit specifications in ISO/IEC 11172-2 and ISO/IEC 11172-3 for the accuracy of the picture rate, audio sample rate, or bitrate, nor for the jitter of these parameters. This issue will be addressed in the compliance testing specification.

In practice the picture rate and audio sample rate will not exactly match the nominal rate unless they are specifically locked to the STC. There is no requirement that these rates should be locked to the system_clock_frequency. However, if either or both rates are locked and have an exact relationship to the system_clock_frequency the encoder may record this by setting the system_audio_lock_flag and/or the system_video_lock_flag. In the case where the audio sample rates and video picture rates are not locked to the STC, the values implied by the PTS fields should closely match the nominal rates indicated in the elementary data streams in order to avoid problems in decoders.

A.2.3 Multiplexing

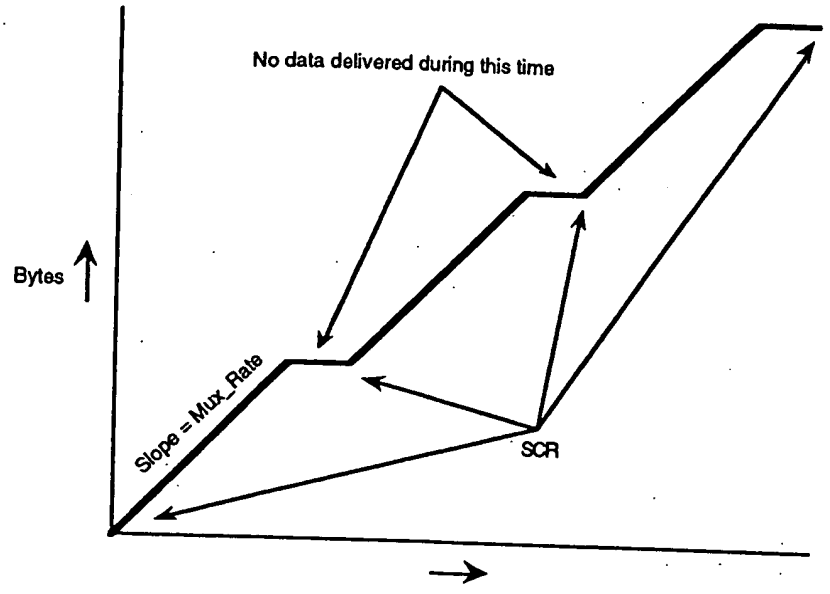
Data from elementary streams are kept distinct by the use of packets, each having a packet start code that identifies the stream. A data packet never contains data from more than one elementary stream and byte ordering is preserved. Thus, after removing the packet headers, packet data from all packets with a common stream identifier are concatenated to recover a single elementary stream.

There is wide latitude in how the multiplex is constructed (the size of packets and the relative placement of packets from different streams). The multiplex is constrained primarily by the STD model, including the specified buffer sizes. The multiplex must be constructed by the encoder in such a way as to ensure that the STD buffers do not overflow or underflow.

In general, short packets require less STD buffering but more system coding overhead than large packets. Other considerations, such as the need to align packets with the sectors on specific storage media, may influence the choice of packet length. A discussion of these factors is given for the particular case of CD-ROM in clause A.4.

Multiplexing may occur either in conjunction with the encoding of elementary streams or the operations may be independent. If multiplexing is combined with coding then the system is free to use the full range of the STD buffer. If multiplexing is independent from the coding, the elementary encoders must allow sufficient space in the STD buffers to allow for multiplexing. In the case of CD-ROM sector-based multiplexing, a headroom of 6 * 1024 bytes is generally sufficient. This is why the buffering limit is 40 kBytes in the video constrained parameters (see ISO/IEC 11172-2) and 46 kbytes in the constrained system parameters stream (see 2.4.6).

Coding for use with a bursty DSM or channel in general requires additional buffering in the STD model beyond that required with a constant-latency DSM or channel. The additional buffering required may be reduced through the careful use of multiplexing and the mux_rate field. The STD uses a byte arrival schedule specified by the SCR and mux_rate fields. In some cases the STD byte arrival schedule can be made to duplicate the actual delivery schedule of the bursty DSM or channel, permitting optimization of STD buffer usage.



STD data input arrival schedule
with mux_rate > average rate between SCR's

Figure A.2 -- STD data input arrival schedule

A.2.4 Encoder constraints caused by decoder buffering

It is the encoding system's responsibility to ensure that the STD model never overflows or underflows its buffers. Encoders must specify the sizes of the buffers used in the STD model for each stream, and limits on the sizes of the STD buffers valid for the entire ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream must be placed in the system header packet. The STD model specifies the exact times when each byte of coded data enters and leaves each buffer in terms of the common system_clock_frequency. This timing is specified by a byte arrival schedule, which is specified in the data stream via the SCR and mux_rate fields, and by a byte removal schedule which is specified by the PTS and DTS fields, the audio sample rate, audio AU and PU sizes, the video picture rate, and the STD model with instantaneous elementary stream decoders.

The STD is a model of a decoder. Encoders must apply the STD model in the creation of multiplexed bitstreams, but real decoders need not be implemented with the same architecture as the STD decoder. Variations in access unit size cause the elementary stream encoders to contribute to part of the STD buffer occupancy, and the action of multiplexing contributes to the rest. In the STD model a single buffer is used for both demultiplexing and elementary stream decoding.

Encoders setting the CSPS_flag must not specify STD buffer sizes larger than those permitted in the constrained system parameter limits. For audio, buffer B_n in the system target decoder must not be larger than 4 096 bytes. For video the maximum size of buffer B_n in the STD depends on both the picture size and the video bitrate, R_V. If either the picture size is less than or equal to the maximum allowed by the constrained parameter video stream (see ISO/IEC 11172-2) or R_V is less than or equal to 1 856 000 bits/s then the maximum size of B_n is 46 * 1 024 bytes. Otherwise the maximum size is:

$$\frac{46 * 1\,024 * R_V}{1\,856\,000} \text{ bytes.}$$

Note that this maximum STD B_n size is larger than the 40 kbyte maximum size of the Video Buffer Verifier to accommodate demultiplexing. If the video bitrate is variable, the peak video bitrate throughout the video stream is used for R_V in the above formula.

A.2.5 Stream characterization

The System Header is a special packet that contains no elementary stream data. Instead it indicates decoding requirements for each of the elementary streams. It indicates a number of limits that apply to the entire ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream, such as data rate, the number of audio and video streams, and the STD buffer size limits for the individual elementary streams. A decoding system may use these limits to establish its ability to play the stream.

The system header contains a flag indicating whether or not the data stream is encoded for constant rate delivery to the STD. If the data rate averaged over the time intervals between SCRs is constant throughout the stream and, when rounded upwards in units of 50 bytes/s, is equal to the value in the mux_rate field, the constant rate flag may be set. If the mux_rate fields indicate a rate higher than this, data is delivered to the STD in bursts at the rates indicated by the mux_rate fields. The mux_rate field will never be lower than that implied by the SCR fields.

The system header must be in the first pack of the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream. It may be repeated within the stream as often as necessary. In broadcast applications this may be desirable.

Real-time encoding systems must calculate suitable limits for the values in the header before starting to encode. Non-real-time encoders may make two passes over the data to find suitable values.

A.2.6 Padding stream

A padding stream is provided. It may be used to maintain a constant total data rate, to achieve sector alignment, or to prevent buffer underflow. As the padding stream is not associated with decoding and presentation, it has neither a buffer in the STD model nor PTS or DTS fields.

Stuffing of up to 16 bytes is allowed within each data packet. This can be used for purposes similar to that of the padding stream and is well suited to providing word (16-bit) or long word (32-bit) alignment in applications where 8-bit alignment is not sufficient. Use of stuffing bytes is the only available method of padding when the number of bytes required for stuffing is less than the minimum size of the padding packet, which is equal to the size of the stream header.

A.2.7 Insertion of private data

Two private stream types, private_stream_1 and private_stream_2, are provided for applications not defined in ISO/IEC 11172. Private_stream_1 follows the same syntax as audio and video streams. It may contain stuffing bytes, a buffer size field, and PTS and DTS fields. The use of these fields is not specified in ISO/IEC 11172. Private_stream_2 is similar except that no syntax is specified for stuffing bytes, buffer sizes, PTS or DTS fields.

Although only two private stream identifiers are provided, private streams may be designed to include branching fields to support an unlimited number of private sub-streams. This mechanism is not defined in ISO/IEC 11172.

A.3 Decoder operations

Figures A.3 and A.4 show two different models of an implementation of a decoding system that are used in the following clauses to illustrate the operation of the system. Both models represent possible implementations.

A.3.1 Decoder synchronization

A.3.1.1 Time-Stamps

The PTS, DTS and SCR fields are the basis for synchronization in decoders. Decoders parse the data stream and extract the PTS or DTS fields contained in the packet coding layer together with the relevant coded data. The PTS and DTS fields are associated with the first access unit (AU) that commences in a packet containing a PTS and/or DTS field. Picture start codes and audio syncwords are not necessarily located at the start of packets, and there may be more than one AU commencing in a packet.

PTS and DTS fields are not necessarily encoded for each picture or audio PU. They are required to occur with intervals not exceeding 0,7 s. This bound allows the construction of a control loop using the PTS values which has guaranteed stability with a known bandwidth. For those PUs for which PTS is not encoded, the decoder can approximate the correct value as the sum of the most recent PTS and an increment. The increment is the nominal number of system_clock_frequency cycles per PU times the number of PUs since the last PTS.

DTSs specify the time at which all the bytes of an access unit are removed from the buffer of an elementary stream decoder in the STD model. The STD model assumes instantaneous decoding of access units. In audio streams, and for B-pictures in video streams, the decoding time is the same as the presentation time and so only the PTSs are encoded; DTS values are implied. In video streams, for I-pictures and P-pictures the DTS values are nominally equal to the PTS value minus the number of picture periods of video reordering delay multiplied by the picture period, in units of the 90kHz STC. The DTS and PTS need not be encoded for every access unit. Intervening values may be calculated from known DTS and PTS values and the rate of PUs for each stream.

Similarly, SCR values, which measure the time of events in the coded data stream, are required to occur with intervals not exceeding 0,7 s. Again, this allows construction of a controller using SCR values with a guaranteed stability.

A.3.1.2 Clock relationships

A decoding system, including all of the synchronized decoders and the source of the coded data, must have exactly one independent time-master. This fact is a natural result of the requirement to avoid overflow and underflow in finite size buffers, while maintaining synchronization of the presentation of data. All other synchronized entities must slave the timing of their operation to the time-master. If a decoder attempts to have more than one simultaneous time-master it may experience problems with buffer management or synchronization.

A decoder system has complete freedom in choosing which entity is the time-master. Typically these entities include the video decoder, the audio decoder, a separate STC, or the data source. Whichever entity is the time-master must communicate to the others the correct value of the STC. A time slave will typically maintain a local STC which is incremented nominally at 90 kHz between updates or corrections. In this way each entity has a continuously updated value of the STC which is nominally correct and which it uses to compare with the time-stamps.

Two examples are presented to illustrate different approaches to designing a decoder. One uses the audio decoder's clock as the time-master, and the other relies on the DSM clock as the time-master.

A.3.1.3 Example: audio as time-master

In this first example, the audio decoder is the time-master in a decoding system. Its operation is described here and illustrated in figure A.3.

The system time clock (STC) is typically initialized to be equal to the value encoded in the first SCR field when that field enters the decoder's buffer. Thereafter the audio decoder controls the STC. As the audio decoder decodes audio AUs and presents audio PUs, it finds PTS fields associated with some of the audio PUs. As the beginning of each PU is output to the user, the associated PTS field contains the correct value of the decoder's STC in an idealized decoder following the STD model. The audio decoder may use this value to update the STC immediately, or to control the STC values via a control loop.

The other decoders then use this STC to determine the correct time to present their decoded data, at the times when their PTS fields are equal to the current value of the STC.

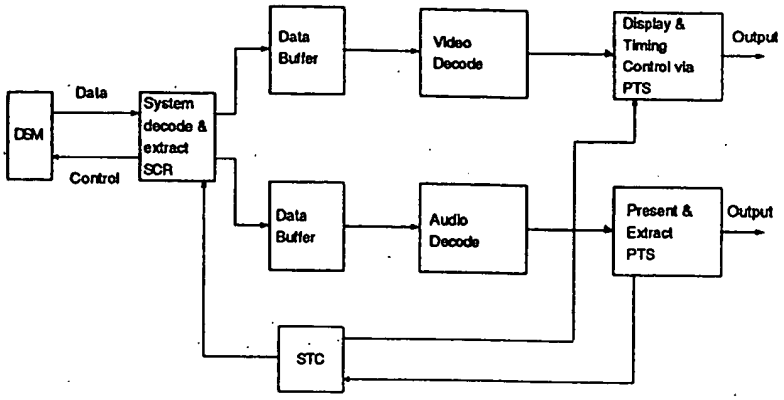


Figure A.3 -- Example of decoding system - audio time-master

Note that the data source (DSM or channel) must provide data to the decoder on a schedule determined by the SCR and mux_rate field values and the decoder's STC. This time relationship is necessary in order to manage the decoder buffers. Buffer management is described further in A.3.3.

The DSM control mechanism obtains data from the DSM at a rate at least equal to that specified in the mux_rate field for each pack until the next SCR field is received. It is not necessary to obtain more data from the DSM until the STC value equals the most recently received SCR value. If more data is read, more buffering will be required.

A.3.1.4 Example: DSM as time-master

In this second example, illustrated in figure A.4, the DSM is the time-master, and the audio and video decoders are implemented as separate decoder subsystems, each receiving the complete multiplexed data stream and extracting and using only that portion of the stream needed.

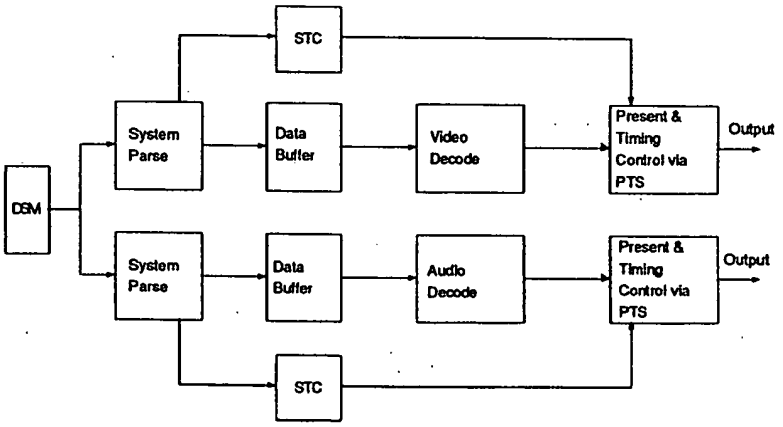


Figure A.4 -- Example of decoding system - DSM time-master

Each decoder receives and parses the complete multiplexed data stream and extracts the system layer information and the coded data needed by that decoder. Synchronization is implemented by the individual decoders slaving their timing to the DSM. The DSM timing is indicated by the SCR fields, which contain the expected value of the decoder's STC at the time that the last byte of the SCR is received by the decoder. Each decoder has a separate STC that is initialized to the first value of SCR received and increments at a nominal 90 kHz rate. The correct timing of the STC is maintained by ensuring that the STC is equal to the SCR values at the time that the SCRs are received. The STC may be maintained either by updating the STC with the value of the SCRs or via a control loop, using the SCR values as reference inputs.

A.3.2 Decoder start-up synchronization

A.3.2.1 Finding start codes at random access

The syntax specified in this part of ISO/IEC 11172 fully specifies the location of the system start codes. If decoding of the stream begins with the first byte, all start codes can be found without uncertainty. After random access to the stream, or in broadcast applications, where decoding may begin at an arbitrary byte, the problem of finding start codes must be solved.

The thirty-two bit pack and packet start codes are constructed so that they cannot occur in video data, which is expected to be the largest portion of the data in most applications. Therefore parsing can start after a random access with a low probability of incorrectly identifying packet data as a start code. Nonetheless, the probability is not zero because start code emulation may occur in audio or private streams.

If additional protection is desired, for example where a large number of audio streams are multiplexed or there is a large amount of private data, a parser could detect a 32-bit pack_start_code followed 8 bytes later by a 24-bit packet_start_code_prefix. Once a probable system start code is found by a parser, the packet_length field may be used to predict the position of the next start code. In this way the probability of incorrectly identifying coded data as a start code decreases geometrically as each successive start code is found. A decoder performing this function has the options of either discarding or saving data until parsing is operating with a sufficient level of confidence. Decoding can then begin with the earliest available data for which system start codes are known.

If the application includes a means of directly addressing known system start codes, then the probability of incorrect parsing of start codes can be made zero.

It is possible for a decoder to "switch channels"; that is, for it to stop decoding one ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream and to start decoding another. This function generally requires that decoding of the second stream start at an unknown byte location. Switching channels is possible, but involves the flushing of decoder buffers and introduces delay. The amount of delay depends on the frequency of start codes in the second stream, as well as on the exact location where decoding starts.

A.3.2.2 System layer startup considerations

Once the decoding system has locked on to the data stream it can begin decoding data.

Decoding systems determine the correct time to start decoding by comparing the DTS (or PTS) fields extracted from the stream or computed as described above, with the current value of the STC. The delay from the time the decoder begins to process data until it can begin to present decoded data is bounded from below by the start-up delay implied by the SCR and PTS fields. A decoder following the STD model may produce decoded output as soon as the following conditions are met:

a) At least one SCR field has been extracted and the STC is synchronized with the DSM via the SCRs and mux_rate fields.

b) At least one PTS has been extracted.

c) A complete coded AU is available and the correct associated PTS value (coded or computed) is known.

d) The PTS for an AU which is available is equal to the current STC value.

DTS fields may be used by a decoder to control input and reorder buffering.

In addition there may be other constraints imposed by the elementary decoders (for example the need for sequence layer information and an I-picture in video coded according to ISO/IEC 11172-2).

This procedure guarantees that the streams will be synchronized, but it does not necessarily ensure that the start up will be simultaneous. It may be necessary to discard some decoded audio or video and to wait until all elementary decoders are ready. In general there will not be audio and video PUs that start at the same time or with the same PTS values. Thus exactly simultaneous start up of audio and video may require muting some audio samples.

A.3.2.3 Coding layer startup considerations

Apart from the system layer decoding considerations, start-up may not be possible immediately, particularly in the case of video. On startup a video decoder requires video sequence layer information and must begin decoding at an I-picture at the start of a group of pictures. In some applications it may be possible to retain the video sequence layer information from a previous access. For more information see ISO/IEC 11172-2

A.3.2.4 Compensation of actual decoding delays

The system target decoder (STD) is a model of a decoder. Encoders must apply the STD model in the creation of a multiplexed stream, but real decoders need not be implemented with the STD architecture. In practice real decoders will not be instantaneous. If a real decoder cannot remove and decode an entire access unit instantaneously, it will need to delay completion of the processing and presentation compared with the values specified in the STD, and a buffer larger than that specified in the STD will be needed. The effective values of PTS and DTS used for timing may be modified in the decoder to accommodate the decoding delay.

For example, if a video decoder requires one picture period to decode a picture, it may delay completion of decoding all the pictures by one picture period with respect to the values indicated by DTS. This in turn requires additional video decoder buffering (the size of the average coded picture). Proper synchronization can be maintained at the output of the entire system by adding one picture period to the effective values of PTS and DTS for all the elementary streams to compensate for this delay.

A.3.2.5 Channel smoothing

ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed streams are, in their most general form, channel independent. They do not assume a specific set of channel characteristics. Decoding from a bursty DSM or channel in general requires additional smoothing buffers not present in the STD model. It is up to decoders to compensate for deviations of a real channel from the STD byte arrival schedule derived from the SCR and mux_rate fields.

In some cases the STD byte arrival schedule can be made to duplicate the actual performance of a bursty DSM or channel. In these cases no extra channel smoothing is required and the performance of the system will be optimized.

A.3.3 Buffer management in the decoder

Buffer management uses the system target decoder (STD) model. Elementary stream decoder buffers are guaranteed not to overflow or underflow during decoding as long as the data stream conforms to the specification, and the complete decoding system is synchronized in terms of SCR and DTS. The STD model precisely specifies the times at which each data byte enters and leaves the buffer of each elementary stream decoder in terms of a common system time-clock.

The upper bound on STD delay specified in 2.4.5.1 is motivated by decoder performance considerations; in conjunction with elementary stream bitrate, the STD delay bounds the size of STD buffers.

ISO/IEC 11172-2 specifies buffer management and start-up delay for video, using the vbv_delay parameter. When video is combined with system layer coding these specifications may conflict. In this case the information in the system layer prevails.

A.3.4 Time identification

The absolute time of presentation of the material contained in the coded data stream is indicated in the PTS fields. These fields are defined as modulo 2^{33} values of the 90 kHz STC. If required, PTS fields can be transcoded into other formats such as SMPTE time-codes. There is no requirement that the PTS values be initialized to any particular value at the start of the stream.

An application can find the coded data associated with a particular value of presentation time by searching the system layer coding for values of PTS equal to or within an appropriate range of the desired presentation time. Note that SMPTE-like time-codes are also defined in the video coding layer defined in ISO/IEC 11172-2.

Selection of 90 kHz as the STC frequency is based on the divisiblity of 90 KHz by the nominal video picture rates of 24 Hz, 25 Hz, 29,97 Hz, and 30 Hz. Use of 33 bit encoding for PTS fields allows elapsed times of up to 24 h to have distinct coded values. Finally, the maximum 0,7 s SCR, PTS and DTS

intervals specified in 2.4.5.2 is small enough for phase-lock loop stability, but large enough to permit one PTS value per I-picture even when I-pictures occur slightly less often than twice per second.

A.4 Parameters for CD-ROM multiplexing

In this clause an example of a multiplex method for CD-ROM is presented. The example is developed for one video and one audio elementary stream. The ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream is stored on a CD-ROM without additional error correction - a mode with 2 324 bytes in each sector. Packs are constructed to be this length so that they may be stored one in each sector. The duration of one sector equals 1/75 s, resulting in a total bitrate of 8 * 2 324 * 75 = 1 394 400 bits / s.

The audio stream is coded in stereo with the ISO/IEC 11172-3 audio layer II coding method at a bitrate of 192 000 bits / s = 24 000 bytes / s. The sample rate used is 44 100 samples / s. Audio presentation units are 1 152 samples each, and so the size of an audio access unit equals:

$$\frac{1\,152 * 24\,000}{44\,100} \text{ bytes}$$

As this result is not an integer, most audio access units are 627 bytes but some are only 626 bytes.

The video stream is coded with a bitrate of 1 158 000 bits / s = 144 750 bytes / s. The value of B_{vbv} used is 36 kBytes, leaving sufficient headroom in the 46 kbyte STD buffer of the Constrained System Parameters for the multiplexing.

The packs are to coincide with the sectors. Each pack contains a pack header, one packet of coded audio or coded video and one packet of a padding stream. Each packet of coded audio or coded video data contains exactly 2 250 data bytes. The padding stream ensures that each pack, including the pack header, consists of the number of bytes available in the data field of the sector in which the pack is stored. In sectors where all 2 324 bytes are available for the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream, packs are 2 324 bytes long. In sectors where less than 2 324 bytes are available, the size of the pack is reduced accordingly by decreasing the size of the padding packet.

The coded audio rate of 24 000 bytes/ s, with each sector containing 2 250 bytes, requires an average 24 000 / 2 250 = $10^2/_3$ audio sectors/s. Similarly, the coded video bitrate of 144 750 bytes / s, with 2 250 bytes per sector, requires an average of 144 750 / 2 250 = $64^1/_3$ video sectors per second. In total, therefore, exactly 75 sectors of audio and video data are required each second for the combined bitstream, exactly filling the total bandwidth of the CD-ROM.

Interleaving the audio and video sectors must not cause the STD buffers to overflow or underflow. Many interleaving schemes are possible that will lead to a multiplexed stream following the Constrained System Parameters. In this example a simple interleaving scheme is used that repeats every 3 s (225 sectors). The scheme starts with 6 video sectors followed by one audio sector. This pattern is repeated 31 times, resulting in an interleave of 217 sectors. The last pattern in the interleave scheme consists of 7 video sectors followed by 1 audio sector. The three second period of 225 sectors contains 32 audio sectors and 193 video sectors. On average there are 193/3 = 64 1/3 video sectors/second and 32/3 = 10 2/3 audio sectors/second, as required.

A.5 Example of an ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream

A sample ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream is presented here to illustrate the syntax and semantic rules governing generation of such streams. This example does not use the same parameters defined in the previous clause. The sample stream is a constrained system parameter stream combining two elementary streams: one video and one audio. The elementary streams are assumed to have been generated with the following specifications:

A.5.1 Audio

Layer II encoding
48 kHz sample rate
24 000 bytes/s rate for a pair of stereo channels
1 152 samples per presentation unit
576 bytes per access unit

The stream so generated, with place holders for coded audio and video data, is listed in A.5.9 "Sample data stream".

A.5.2 Video

Constrained parameter video encoding at 150 000 bytes/s.
25 Hz picture rate source.
40 * 1 024 Byte video buffer verifier

The order of pictures at the decoder input is

1I 4P 2B 3B 7P 5B 6B 10P 8B 9B 13I 11B 12B 16P 14B 15B 19P 17B 18B 22P 20B 21B 25I

I pictures coded at 19 000 bytes each
P pictures coded at 10 000 bytes each
B pictures coded at 2 800 or 2 900 (2 875 byte average) each

A.5.3 Multiplexing strategy

The example employs packets of length 2 048 bytes for both audio and video. The multiplex starts with thirteen video packets to limit audio buffering requirements. Thereafter, one audio packet is interleaved with every 6 to 7 video packets to match the 6,25 ratio of video bitrate to audio bitrate.

For simplicity, packets are constructed with a common number of packet_data_byte entries. Stuffing bytes are used to ensure that all packets have 20 header bytes and 2 028 data bytes.

A pack is generated every third packet. This structure is somewhat arbitrary, but leads to a pack rate of roughly 29 Hz, comfortably over the 1 to 2 Hz requirement of 2.4.5.2 (Coding of the system_clock_reference). The cost of such frequent pack formation is not great: all pack headers except the first are 12 bytes long, so pack headers account for some 0,2% of the total bitrate.

The sample bitstream is long word aligned. That is, all packets and all packet data (except the initial padding stream packet) start at 32-bit boundaries. Because the first pack header is 30 bytes long (it contains 18 bytes of system header information), a special padding stream packet appears in the first pack. This 10-byte packet guarantees long word alignment for subsequent packets.

To summarize, the stream is composed of packs and packets as follows:

Pack 1

header (includes system_header)	30 bytes
Padding stream packet	10 bytes
Video packet #1	2 048 bytes
Video packet #2	2 048 bytes
Video packet #3	2 048 bytes

Pack 2

header	12 bytes
Video packet #4	2 048 bytes
Video packet #5	2 048 bytes
Video packet #6	2 048 bytes

Pack 3

header	12 bytes
Video packet #7	2 048 bytes
Video packet #8	2 048 bytes
Video packet #9	2 048 bytes

Pack 4

header	12 bytes
Video packet #10	2 048 bytes
Video packet #11	2 048 bytes
Video packet #12	2 048 bytes

Pack 5

header	12 bytes
Video packet #13	2 048 bytes
Audio packet #1	2 048 bytes
Video packet #14	2 048 bytes

.
.
.

A.5.4 System clock reference (SCR)

Bytes 5 to 9 of every pack header contain encoded system_clock_reference fields. The multiplexed stream's data rate is computed from the data in A.5.1 and A.5.3, and the following formula:

$$R_{mux} = (\text{video data rate} + \text{audio data rate}) * \left(1 + \frac{(\text{packet header\_size} + \text{pack header\_size/packs/packet})}{\text{packet\_data\_size}}\right)$$

$$R_{mux} = (150\,000 + 24\,000)\left(1 + \frac{20 + 12/3}{2\,028}\right)$$

$$= 176\,059{,}1717 \text{ bytes/s}$$

This value can be rounded to 176 059 bytes/s without affecting the values in the data stream in this particular example.

R_{mux} and the 90 kHz clock frequency are used by the encoder to convert SCR field byte indices to system_clock_reference values. The first SCR field, equal to 3 904, simply reflects a non-zero starting value for the encoder's clock. Subsequent SCR fields evaluate to

Pack	system_clock_reference
1	3 904
2	7 065
3	10 212
4	13 359
5	16 506
6	19 653
7	22 800
8	25 947

To understand the source of these numbers, consider the second pack's SCR value, SCR2 . The SCR2 field occurs 6 180 bytes after the first pack's. SCR2 is related to SCR1 in terms of the elapsed time. For this example's constant rate byte delivery, SCR2 is

SCR2 = SCR1 + 6 180 * 90 000/176 059
= 7 065

A.5.5 Presentation time-stamps (PTS)

The video coding model used for this example leads to coded pictures of the type:

1I 4P 2B 3B 7P 5B 6B 10P 8B 9B 13I 11B 12B 16P 14B 15B 19P 17B 18B 22P 20B 21B 25I

Recalling that coded I, P, and B pictures are assumed to be 19 000, 10 000 and 2 800 to 2 900 bytes, respectively, and that packets contain 2 028 bytes of data each, it follows that picture start codes occur in video packet#1 (I picture), video packet#10 (P picture), video packet#15 (B-picture), etc. This is reflected by the presence of PTS fields in video packets 1, 10, 15, etc., in the sample stream listing.

In this example, N, the number of coded pictures between I pictures equals 12. The number of consecutive B pictures (M-1) between I or P pictures equals two, and thus M=3.

The audio coding model used for this example employs 576 byte access units, hence every 2 048-byte audio packet contains an access unit start code. All audio packets contain PTS fields.

The value of an elementary stream's first Decoding Time-stamp (DTS) field (or PTS if the two are equal) when compared with the initial SCR field, determines the decoder start-up delay for that stream. In the example, the first video DTS field has the value 22 804. The difference between the first pack's SCR value and the first video packet's DTS value is:

start-up delay = (22 804 - 3 904 cycles)*(1 000 ms/s)/(90 000 cycles/s)
= 210 ms

This delay is required to prevent overflow or underflow in the system target decoder. It tells the decoder that the first I picture should be decoded 210 ms and presented 250 ms after reading the last byte of the first SCR field in the multiplexed stream.

Note that the first PTS field in the audio stream equals 26 395, a number slightly lower than the video's. This inequality arises if the video and audio encoders are not turned on at exactly the same instant, and does not imply synchronization error.

The system_audio_lock_flag is set in the system header packet of the the sample bitstream, but the system_video_lock_flag is reset. Therefore, decoders may assume a rational relationship between the audio clock and the system time clock, but may not assume such a relationship between the video clock and the system time clock. PTS and DTS value present in the stream are consistent with exact clocks for both video and audio; in practice, however, because the video clock is not locked some drift would appear in video time-stamps. Over one second, or 90 000 clock cycles, errors of 50 parts per million would lead to PTS values differing from the nominal values by 4 or 5. The discrepancy accumulates over time.

A.5.6 Decoding time-stamp (DTS)

For I and P pictures, it is generally true that system target decoder operations for decoding and presentation occur at different times. Steady state operation with this example's GOP structure (M=3, N=12) leads to I-

and P-pictures being decoded three picture periods before their presentation. Thus, video packet #10 has DTS equal to 26 404 but PTS is equal to 37 204. This 10 800 clock cycle, 120 ms difference requires the P-picture to be stored in the system target decoder's reorder buffer for 3 picture periods.

Analysis of DTS and PTS values for the first I-picture (video packet #1) reveals a relationship needed to initialize the reorder buffer. The I-picture is decoded when the decoder's clock reaches 22 804, but nothing is displayed. The initialization is complete 40 ms later when the P-picture discussed in the previous paragraph is decoded, and the I-picture is displayed.

The second audio PTS field (value of 35 035) lags the first by 8 640 clock cycles, or 96 ms. Audio presentation units are 1 152 samples long, which at a 48 kHz sampling rate, corresponds to 24 ms. The second audio PTS field, therefore, appears in the stream after the start code for the fifth audio access unit.

A.5.7 Buffer sizes

The example documents a constrained system parameter stream with pictures conforming to the video constrained parameters defined in Part 2 of this International Standard. The maximum allowable buffer sizes in the STD for such streams are used. These are:

Video streams: 46 * 1 024 bytes
Audio streams: 4 * 1 024 bytes

A.5.8 Adherence to System Target Decoder (STD)

For a stream to be a valid ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream, it must play on the system target decoder without overflow or underflow of any STD buffer. Tables A.1 and A.2 track buffer occupancy for the STD video and audio buffers, respectively. The tables demonstrate that the one-second long sample bitstream complies with the STD buffering requirements.

Table A.1 -- System target decoder video buffer occupancy

Input Picture Index and Type (in coded order)	End-of-picture delivery time (ms)	Decoding / Presentation time (ms)	Buffer Occupancy (bytes)
—	0	—	—
1I	109	210/250	34 568
4P	178	250/370	21 560
2B	194	290	17 468
3B	211	330	20 928
7P	280	370/490	23 584
5B	297	410	20 196
6B	313	450	22 676
10P	382	490/610	26 664
8B	399	530	21 692
9B	427	570	25 756
13I	548	610/730	27 884
11B	564	650	15 848
12B	580	690	17 900
16P	650	730/850	21 964
14B	678	770	16 816
15B	694	810	20 880
19P	763	850/970	23 016
17B	780	890	20 072
18B	796	930	22 460
22P	866	970/1 090	26 088
20B	882	1 010	23 052
21B	898	1 050	27 308
25I	1 019	1 090/1 210	31 372

The end-of-picture delivery time is the time of arrival of the final byte of the picture at the input of the video buffer in the STD.

In preparing these tables, coded B-pictures were assumed to alternate between 2 800 and 2 900 bytes in a manner leading to an overall video rate of 150 000 bytes/s.

Table A.2 -- System target decoder audio buffer occupancy

AAU#	end-of-AAU delivery time (ms)	PTS	Buffer Occupancy (bytes)
–	152	—	—
1	155	250	3 000
2	158	274	3 480
3	161	298	2 904
4	246	322	2 328
5	249	346	3 780
6	253	370	3 204
7	256	394	2 628
8	329	418	3 904
9	333	442	3 504
10	336	466	2 928
11	409	490	2 444
12	412	514	3 804
13	416	538	3 228
14	419	562	2 652
15	492	586	2 696
16	496	610	3 528
17	499	634	2 952
18	584	658	2 376
19	587	682	3 828
20	590	706	3 252
21	594	730	2 676

Each row in tables A.1 and A.2 indicates timing and buffer occupancy for a single video or audio access unit. The columns in table A.2 are, from left to right:

1) Identification of the access unit.
2) The time of arrival of the final byte of the access unit.
3) The access unit's decoding and presentation time-stamp.
4) The number of bytes in the STD buffer immediately before extraction of the access unit.

Consider, for example, the row in table A.1 for picture 4P. This picture's final byte occurs at byte number 31 444 in the multiplex stream. The stream is delivered at a constant rate of 176 059 bytes/s. Therefore, the delivery of picture 4P is complete 1 000 * 31 444 / 176 059 = 178 ms into the stream. The picture's DTS and PTS values are encoded in the stream. They are 250 ms and 370 ms greater than the SCR of the first pack. At time 250 ms, when the picture is decoded, the 22nd packet - an audio packet - is being delivered. At that time the video buffer is not being filled. The buffer contains the contents of exactly 20 video packets, less one I-picture that was extracted 40 ms earlier. The buffer fullness is therefore 20*2 028 - 19 000 = 21 560 bytes.

By comparing decoding times with delivery times it is possible to see that underflow is avoided. So long as an access unit has been completely delivered before it is required for decoding, underflow does not occur.

If the maximum buffer fullness immediately before decoding each access unit is compared with the STD buffer size for the stream, it is possible to determine that buffer overflow is avoided. In this example the video stream buffer never exceeds 46 kbytes and the audio buffer never exceeds 4 kbytes. Note that the late placement of the first audio packet is necessary to avoid audio buffer overflow.

A.5.9 Sample data stream

No. of Bytes	Field Description	Coded Values
4	pack_start_code (#1)	000001BA
1	'0010', SCR-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	21
2	SCR-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0001
2	SCR-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	1E81
3	marker_bit, mux_rate, marker_bit	801B83
4	system_header_start_code	000001BB
2	header_length	000C
3	marker_bit, rate_bound , marker_bit	801B83
1	audio_bound, fixed_flag , CSPS_flag	07
1	system_audio_lock_flag, system_video_lock_flag, marker_bit, video_bound	A1
1	reserved_byte	FF
1	stream_id (audio)	C0
2	'11', STD_buffer_bound_scale , STD_buffer_size_bound	C020
1	stream_id (video)	E3
2	'11', STD_buffer_bound_scale , STD_buffer_size_bound	E02E
3	packet_start_code_prefix	000001
1	stream_id (padding)	BE
2	packet_length	0003
1	'0000 1111'	0F
1	'1111 1111'	FF
1	'1111 1111'	FF
1	'1111 1111'	FF
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#1V)	000001
1	stream_id (video)	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
4	stuffing_bytes	FFFFFFFF
1	'0011', PTS-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	31
2	PTS-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0001
2	PTS-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	CE49
1	'0001', DTS-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	11
2	DTS-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0001
2	DTS-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	B229
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#2V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#3V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
4	pack_start_code (#2)	000001BA
1	'0010', SCR-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	21
2	SCR-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0001
2	SCR-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	3733
3	marker_bit, mux_rate , marker_bit	801B83
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#4V)	000001

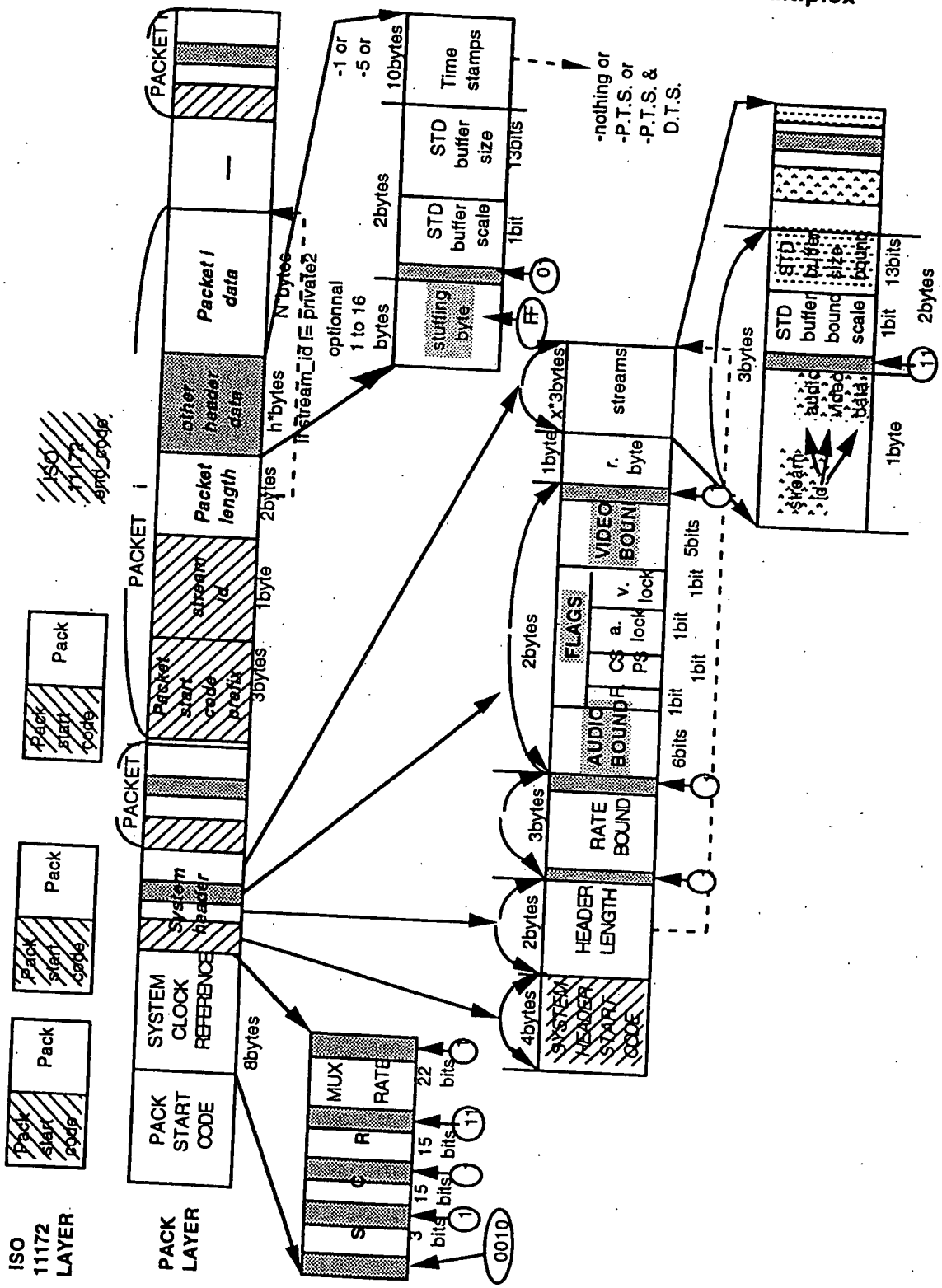
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_bytes	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#5V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#6V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
4	pack_start_code (#3)	000001BA
1	'0010', SCR-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	21
2	SCR-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0001
2	SCR-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	47C9
3	marker_bit, mux_rate , marker_bit	801B83
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#7V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#8V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#9V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
4	pack_start_code (#4)	000001BA
1	'0010', SCR-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	21
2	SCR-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0001
2	SCR-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	685F
3	marker_bit, mux_rate , marker_bit	801B83
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#10V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
2	stuffing_byte	FFFF
2	'01', STD_buffer_scale , STD_buffer_size	602E
1	'0011', PTS-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	31
2	PTS-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0003
2	PTS-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	22A9
1	'0001', DTS-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	11
2	DTS-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0001
2	DTS-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	CE49
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X

3	packet_start_code_prefix (#11V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#12V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
4	pack_start_code (#5)	000001BA
1	'0010', SCR-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	21
2	SCR-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0001
2	SCR-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	80F5
3	marker_bit, mux_rate , marker_bit	801B83
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#13V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#1A)	000001
1	stream_id (audio)	C0
2	packet_length	07FA
7	stuffing_bytes	FF....FF
4	'01', STD_buffer_scale , STD_buffer_size	4020
1	'0010', PTS-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	21
2	PTS-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0001
2	PTS-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	CE37
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#14V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
4	pack_start_code (#6)	000001BA
1	'0010', SCR-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	21
2	SCR-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0001
2	SCR-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	998B
3	marker_bit, mux_rate , marker_bit	801B83
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#15V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
9	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
1	'0010, PTS-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	21
2	PTS-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0001
2	PTS-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	EA69
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#16V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_lengt	07FA

9	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
1	'0010', PTS-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	21
2	PTS-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0003
2	PTS-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	0689
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#17V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
4	pack_start_code (#7)	000001BA
1	'0010', SCR-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	21
2	SCR-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0001
2	SCR-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	B221
3	marker_bit, mux_rate , marker_bit	801B83
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#18V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
2	stuffing_byte	FFFF
2	'01', STD_buffer_scale , STD_buffer_size	602E
1	'0011', PTS-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	31
2	PTS-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0003
2	PTS-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	7709
1	'0001', DTS-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	11
2	DTS-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0003
2	DTS-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	22A9
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#19V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#20V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
4	pack_start_code (#8)	000001BA
1	'0010', SCR-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	21
2	SCR-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0001
2	SCR-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	CAB7
3	marker_bit, mux_rate , marker_bit	801B83
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#2A)	000001
1	stream_id (audio)	C0
2	packet_length	07FA
7	stuffing_bytes	FF....FF
2	'01', STD_buffer_scale , STD_buffer_size	4020
1	'0010', PTS-32 thru 30 , marker_bit	21
2	PTS-29 thru 15 , marker_bit	0003
2	PTS-14 thru 0 , marker_bit	11B7
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X

3	packet_start_code_prefix (#21V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
3	packet_start_code_prefix (#22V)	000001
1	stream_id	E3
2	packet_length	07FA
14	stuffing_byte	FF....FF
2 028	packet_data_byte	XXX...X
:		
:		
4	iso_11172_end_code	000001B9

A.6 Illustration of the structure of the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplex



Annex B

(informative)

List of patent holders

The user's attention is called to the possibility that - for some of the processes specified in this part of ISO/IEC 11172 - compliance with this International Standard may require use of an invention covered by patent rights.

By publication of this part of ISO/IEC 11172, no position is taken with respect to the validity of this claim or of any patent rights in connection therewith. However, each company listed in this annex has filed with the Information Technology Task Force (ITTF) a statement of willingness to grant a license under such rights that they hold on reasonable and nondiscriminatory terms and conditions to applicants desiring to obtain such a license.

Information regarding such patents can be obtained from :

AT&T
32 Avenue of the Americas
New York
NY 10013-2412
USA

Aware
1 Memorial Drive
Cambridge
02142 Massachusetts
USA

Bellcore
290 W Mount Pleasant Avenue
Livingston
NJ 07039
USA

The British Broadcasting Corporation
Broadcasting House
London
W1A 1AA
United Kingdom

British Telecommunications plc
Intellectual Property Unit
13th Floor
151 Gower Street
London
WC1E 6BA
United Kingdom

CCETT
4 Rue du Clos-Courtel
BP 59
F-35512
Cesson-Sevigne Cedex
France

CNET
38-40 Rue du General Leclerc
F-92131 Issy-les-Moulineaux
France

Compression Labs, Incorporated
2860 Junction Avenue
San Jose
CA 95134
USA

CSELT
Via G Reiss Romoli 274
I-10148 Torino
Italy

CompuSonics Corporation
PO Box 61017
Palo Alto
CA 94306
USA

Daimler Benz AG
PO Box 800 230
Epplestrasse 225
D-7000 Stuttgart 80
Germany

Dornier Gmbh
An der Bundesstrasse 31
D-7990 Friedrichshafen1
Germany

Fraunhofer Gesselschaft zur Foerderung der Angerwandten Forschung e.V.
Leonrodstrasse 54
8000 Muenchen 19
Germany

Hitachi Ltd
6 Kanda-Surugadai 4 chome
Chiyoda-ku
Tokyo 101
Japan

Institut für Rundfunktechnik Gmbh
Florianmühlstraße 60
8000 München 45
Germany

International Business Machines Corporation
Armonk
New York 10504
USA

KDD Corporation
2-3-2 Nishishinjuku
Shinjuku-ku
Tokyo
Japan

Licentia Patent-Verwaltungs-Gmbh
Theodor-Stern-Kai &
D-6000 Frankfurt 70
Germany

Massachusetts Institute of Technology
20 Ames Street
Cambridge
Massachusetts 02139
USA

Matsushita Electric Industrial Co. Ltd
1006 Oaza-Kadoma
Kadoma
Osaka 571
Japan

Mitsubishi Electric Corporation
2-3 Marunouchi
2-Chome
Chiyoda-Ku
Tokyo
100 Japan

NEC Corporation
7-1 Shiba 5-Chome
Minato-ku
Tokyo
Japan

Nippon Hoso Kyokai
2-2-1 Jin-nan
Shibuya-ku
Tokyo 150-01
Japan

Philips Electronics NV
Groenewoudseweg 1
5621 BA Eindhoven
The Netherlands

Pioneer Electronic Corporation
4-1 Meguro 1-Chome
Meguro-ku
Tokyo 153
Japan

Ricoh Co, Ltd
1-3-6 Nakamagome
Ohta-ku
Tokyo 143
Japan

Schawartz Engineering & Design
15 Buckland Court
San Carlos, CA 94070
USA

Sony Corporation
6-7-35 Kitashinagawa
Shinagawa-ku
Tokyo 141
Japan

Symbionics
St John's Innovation Centre
Cowley Road
Cambridge
CB4 4WS
United Kingdom

Telefunken Fernseh und Rundfunk GmbH
Gottinger Chaussee
D-3000 Hannover 91
Germany

Thomson Consumer Electronics
9, Place des Vosges
La Défense 5
92400 Courbevoie
France

Toppan Printing Co, Ltd
1-5-1 Taito
Taito-ku
Tokyo 110
Japan

Toshiba Corporation
1-1 Shibaru 1-Chome
Minato-ku
Tokyo 105
Japan

Victor Company of Japan Ltd
12 Moriya-cho 3 chome
Kanagawa-ku
Yokohama
Kanagawa 221
Japan

UDC 681.3.04(084.14)

Descriptors: data processing, moving pictures, video data, audio data, video recording, data storage devices, digital storage, coded representation, coding (data conversion), system architecture.

Price based on 53 pages

INTERNATIONAL STANDARD

ISO/IEC 11172-2

First edition
1993-08-01

Information technology — Coding of moving pictures and associated audio for digital storage media at up to about 1,5 Mbit/s —

Part 2:
Video

Technologies de l'information — Codage de l'image animée et du son associé pour les supports de stockage numérique jusqu'à environ 1,5 Mbit/s —

Partie 2: Vidéo

Reference number
ISO/IEC 11172-2:1993(E)

Contents

Page

Foreword

ISO (the International Organization for Standardization) and IEC (the International Electrotechnical Commission) form the specialized system for worldwide standardization. National bodies that are members of ISO or IEC participate in the development of International Standards through technical committees established by the respective organization to deal with particular fields of technical activity. ISO and IEC technical committees collaborate in fields of mutual interest. Other international organizations, governmental and non-governmental, in liaison with ISO and IEC, also take part in the work.

In the field of information technology, ISO and IEC have established a joint technical committee, ISO/IEC JTC 1. Draft International Standards adopted by the joint technical committee are circulated to national bodies for voting. Publication as an International Standard requires approval by at least 75 % of the national bodies casting a vote.

International Standard ISO/IEC 11172-2 was prepared by Joint Technical Committee ISO/IEC JTC 1, *Information technology*, Sub-Committee SC 29, *Coded representation of audio, picture, multimedia and hypermedia information.*

ISO/IEC 11172 consists of the following parts, under the general title *Information technology — Coding of moving pictures and associated audio for digital storage media at up to about 1,5 Mbit/s*:

— *Part 1: Systems*

— *Part 2: Video*

— *Part 3: Audio*

— *Part 4: Compliance testing*

Annexes A, B and C form an integral part of this part of ISO/IEC 11172. Annexes D, E and F are for information only.

Introduction

Note -- Readers interested in an overview of the MPEG Video layer should read this Introduction and then proceed to annex D, before returning to clauses 1 and 2.

0.1 Purpose

This part of ISO/IEC 11172 was developed in response to the growing need for a common format for representing compressed video on various digital storage media such as CDs, DATs, Winchester disks and optical drives. This part of ISO/IEC 11172 specifies a coded representation that can be used for compressing video sequences to bitrates around 1,5 Mbit/s. The use of this part of ISO/IEC 11172 means that motion video can be manipulated as a form of computer data and can be transmitted and received over existing and future networks. The coded representation can be used with both 625-line and 525-line television and provides flexibility for use with workstation and personal computer displays.

This part of ISO/IEC 11172 was developed to operate principally from storage media offering a continuous transfer rate of about 1,5 Mbit/s. Nevertheless it can be used more widely than this because the approach taken is generic.

0.1.1 Coding parameters

The intention in developing this part of ISO/IEC 11172 has been to define a source coding algorithm with a large degree of flexibility that can be used in many different applications. To achieve this goal, a number of the parameters defining the characteristics of coded bitstreams and decoders are contained in the bitstream itself. This allows for example, the algorithm to be used for pictures with a variety of sizes and aspect ratios and on channels or devices operating at a wide range of bitrates.

Because of the large range of the characteristics of bitstreams that can be represented by this part of ISO/IEC 11172, a sub-set of these coding parameters known as the "Constrained Parameters" has been defined. The aim in defining the constrained parameters is to offer guidance about a widely useful range of parameters. Conforming to this set of constraints is not a requirement of this part of ISO/IEC 11172. A flag in the bitstream indicates whether or not it is a Constrained Parameters bitstream.

Summary of the Constrained Parameters:

Horizontal picture size	Less than or equal to 768 pels
Vertical picture size	Less than or equal to 576 lines
Picture area	Less than or equal to 396 macroblocks
Pel rate	Less than or equal to 396x25 macroblocks/s
Picture rate	Less than or equal to 30 Hz
Motion vector range	Less than -64 to +63,5 pels (using half-pel vectors) [backward_f_code and forward_f_code <= 4 (see table D.7)]
Input buffer size (in VBV model)	Less than or equal to 327 680 bits
Bitrate	Less than or equal to 1 856 000 bits/s (constant bitrate)

0.2 Overview of the algorithm

The coded representation defined in this part of ISO/IEC 11172 achieves a high compression ratio while preserving good picture quality. The algorithm is not lossless as the exact pel values are not preserved during coding. The choice of the techniques is based on the need to balance a high picture quality and compression ratio with the requirement to make random access to the coded bitstream. Obtaining good picture quality at the bitrates of interest demands a very high compression ratio, which is not achievable with intraframe coding alone. The need for random access, however, is best satisfied with pure intraframe coding. This requires a careful balance between intra- and interframe coding and between recursive and non-recursive temporal redundancy reduction.

A number of techniques are used to achieve a high compression ratio. The first, which is almost independent from this part of ISO/IEC 11172, is to select an appropriate spatial resolution for the signal. The algorithm then uses block-based motion compensation to reduce the temporal redundancy. Motion compensation is used for causal prediction of the current picture from a previous picture, for non-causal prediction of the current picture from a future picture, or for interpolative prediction from past and future pictures. Motion vectors are defined for each 16-pel by 16-line region of the picture. The difference signal, the prediction error, is further compressed using the discrete cosine transform (DCT) to remove spatial correlation before it is quantized in an irreversible process that discards the less important information. Finally, the motion vectors are combined with the DCT information, and coded using variable length codes.

0.2.1 Temporal processing

Because of the conflicting requirements of random access and highly efficient compression, three main picture types are defined. Intra-coded pictures (I-Pictures) are coded without reference to other pictures. They provide access points to the coded sequence where decoding can begin, but are coded with only a moderate compression ratio. Predictive coded pictures (P-Pictures) are coded more efficiently using motion compensated prediction from a past intra or predictive coded picture and are generally used as a reference for further prediction. Bidirectionally-predictive coded pictures (B-Pictures) provide the highest degree of compression but require both past and future reference pictures for motion compensation. Bidirectionally-predictive coded pictures are never used as references for prediction. The organisation of the three picture types in a sequence is very flexible. The choice is left to the encoder and will depend on the requirements of the application. Figure 1 illustrates the relationship between the three different picture types.

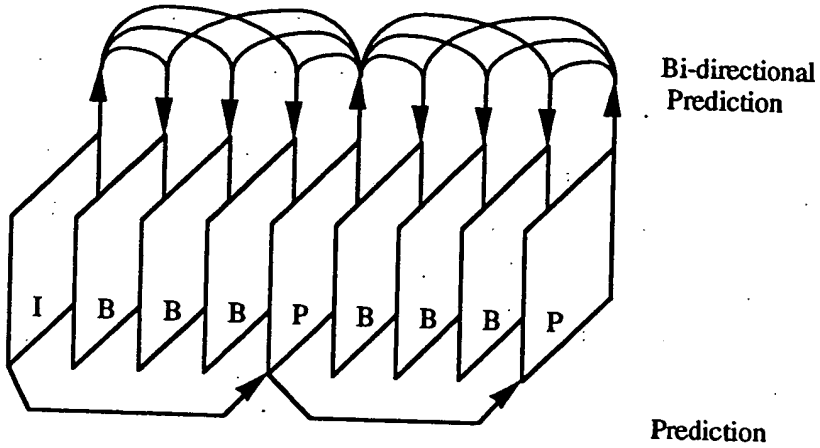


Figure 1 -- Example of temporal picture structure

The fourth picture type defined in this part of ISO/IEC 11172, the D-picture, is provided to allow a simple, but limited quality, fast-forward playback mode.

0.2.2 Motion representation - macroblocks

The choice of 16 by 16 macroblocks for the motion-compensation unit is a result of the trade-off between increasing the coding efficiency provided by using motion information and the overhead needed to store it. Each macroblock can be one of a number of different types. For example, intra-coded, forward-predictive-coded, backward-predictive coded, and bidirectionally-predictive-coded macroblocks are permitted in bidirectionally-predictive coded pictures. Depending on the type of the macroblock, motion vector information and other side information are stored with the compressed prediction error signal in each macroblock. The motion vectors are encoded differentially with respect to the last coded motion vector, using variable-length codes. The maximum length of the vectors that may be represented can be programmed, on a picture-by-picture basis, so that the most demanding applications can be met without compromising the performance of the system in more normal situations.

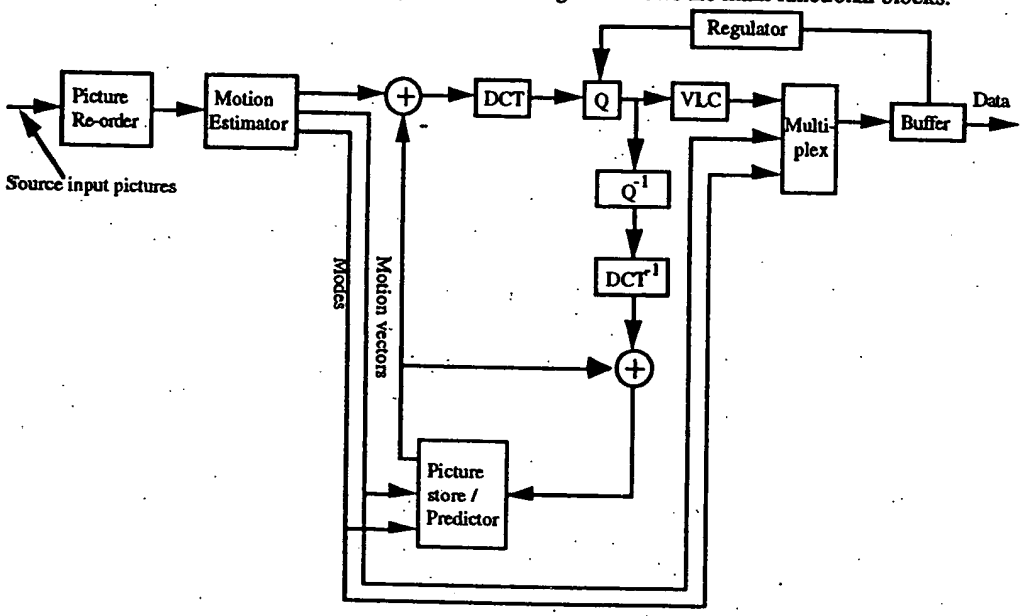
It is the responsibility of the encoder to calculate appropriate motion vectors. This part of ISO/IEC 11172 does not specify how this should be done.

0.2.3 Spatial redundancy reduction

Both original pictures and prediction error signals have high spatial redundancy. This part of ISO/IEC 11172 uses a block-based DCT method with visually weighted quantization and run-length coding. Each 8 by 8 block of the original picture for intra-coded macroblocks or of the prediction error for predictive-coded macroblocks is transformed into the DCT domain where it is scaled before being quantized. After quantization many of the coefficients are zero in value and so two-dimensional run-length and variable length coding is used to encode the remaining coefficients efficiently.

0.3 Encoding

This part of ISO/IEC 11172 does not specify an encoding process. It specifies the syntax and semantics of the bitstream and the signal processing in the decoder. As a result, many options are left open to encoders to trade-off cost and speed against picture quality and coding efficiency. This clause is a brief description of the functions that need to be performed by an encoder. Figure 2 shows the main functional blocks.



where

DCT is discrete cosine transform
DCT^{-1} is inverse discrete cosine transform
Q is quantization
Q^{-1} is dequantization
VLC is variable length coding

Figure 2 -- Simplified video encoder block diagram

The input video signal must be digitized and represented as a luminance and two colour difference signals (Y, C_b, C_r). This may be followed by preprocessing and format conversion to select an appropriate window, resolution and input format. This part of ISO/IEC 11172 requires that the colour difference signals (C_b and C_r) are subsampled with respect to the luminance by 2:1 in both vertical and horizontal directions and are reformatted, if necessary, as a non-interlaced signal.

The encoder must choose which picture type to use for each picture. Having defined the picture types, the encoder estimates motion vectors for each 16 by 16 macroblock in the picture. In P-Pictures one vector is needed for each non-intra macroblock and in B-Pictures one or two vectors are needed.

If B-Pictures are used, some reordering of the picture sequence is necessary before encoding. Because B-Pictures are coded using bidirectional motion compensated prediction, they can only be decoded after the subsequent reference picture (an I or P-Picture) has been decoded. Therefore the pictures are reordered by the

encoder so that the pictures arrive at the decoder in the order for decoding. The correct display order is recovered by the decoder.

The basic unit of coding within a picture is the macroblock. Within each picture, macroblocks are encoded in sequence, left to right, top to bottom. Each macroblock consists of six 8 by 8 blocks: four blocks of luminance, one block of Cb chrominance, and one block of Cr chrominance. See figure 3. Note that the picture area covered by the four blocks of luminance is the same as the area covered by each of the chrominance blocks. This is due to subsampling of the chrominance information to match the sensitivity of the human visual system.

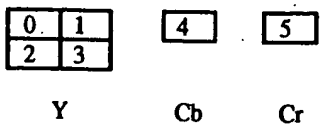


Figure 3 -- Macroblock structure

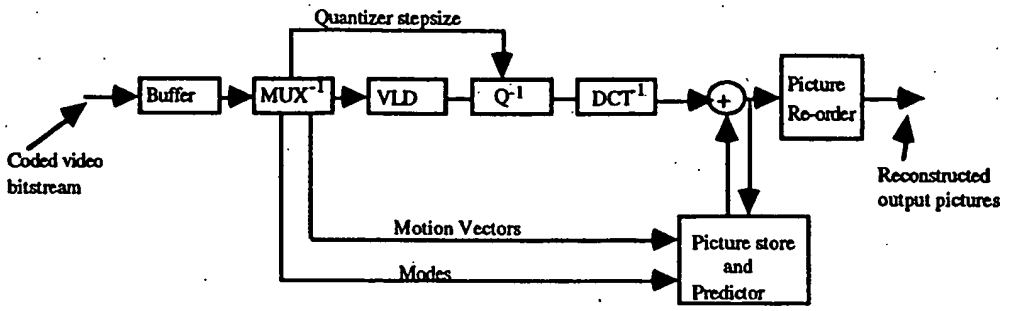
Firstly, for a given macroblock, the coding mode is chosen. It depends on the picture type, the effectiveness of motion compensated prediction in that local region, and the nature of the signal within the block. Secondly, depending on the coding mode, a motion compensated prediction of the contents of the block based on past and/or future reference pictures is formed. This prediction is subtracted from the actual data in the current macroblock to form an error signal. Thirdly, this error signal is separated into 8 by 8 blocks (4 luminance and 2 chrominance blocks in each macroblock) and a discrete cosine transform is performed on each block. Each resulting 8 by 8 block of DCT coefficients is quantized and the two-dimensional block is scanned in a zig-zag order to convert it into a one-dimensional string of quantized DCT coefficients. Fourthly, the side-information for the macroblock (mode, motion vectors etc) and the quantized coefficient data are encoded. For maximum efficiency, a number of variable length code tables are defined for the different data elements. Run-length coding is used for the quantized coefficient data.

A consequence of using different picture types and variable length coding is that the overall data rate is variable. In applications that involve a fixed-rate channel, a FIFO buffer may be used to match the encoder output to the channel. The status of this buffer may be monitored to control the number of bits generated by the encoder. Controlling the quantization process is the most direct way of controlling the bitrate. This part of ISO/IEC 11172 specifies an abstract model of the buffering system (the Video Buffering Verifier) in order to constrain the maximum variability in the number of bits that are used for a given picture. This ensures that a bitstream can be decoded with a buffer of known size.

At this stage, the coded representation of the picture has been generated. The final step in the encoder is to regenerate I-Pictures and P-Pictures by decoding the data so that they can be used as reference pictures for subsequent encoding. The quantized coefficients are dequantized and an inverse 8 by 8 DCT is performed on each block. The prediction error signal produced is then added back to the prediction signal and limited to the required range to give a decoded reference picture.

0.4 Decoding

Decoding is the inverse of the encoding operation. It is considerably simpler than encoding as there is no need to perform motion estimation and there are many fewer options. The decoding process is defined by this part of ISO/IEC 11172. The description that follows is a very brief overview of one possible way of decoding a bitstream. Other decoders with different architectures are possible. Figure 4 shows the main functional blocks.



Where

DCT^{-1} is inverse discrete cosine transform
Q^{-1} is dequantization
MUX^{-1} is demultiplexing
VLD is variable length decoding

Figure 4 -- Basic video decoder block diagram

For fixed-rate applications, the channel fills a FIFO buffer at a constant rate with the coded bitstream. The decoder reads this buffer and decodes the data elements in the bitstream according to the defined syntax.

As the decoder reads the bitstream, it identifies the start of a coded picture and then the type of the picture. It decodes each macroblock in the picture in turn. The macroblock type and the motion vectors, if present, are used to construct a prediction of the current macroblock based on past and future reference pictures that have been stored in the decoder. The coefficient data are decoded and dequantized. Each 8 by 8 block of coefficient data is transformed by an inverse DCT (specified in annex A), and the result is added to the prediction signal and limited to the defined range.

After all the macroblocks in the picture have been processed, the picture has been reconstructed. If it is an I-picture or a P-picture it is a reference picture for subsequent pictures and is stored, replacing the oldest stored reference picture. Before the pictures are displayed they may need to be re-ordered from the coded order to their natural display order. After reordering, the pictures are available, in digital form, for post-processing and display in any manner that the application chooses.

0.5 Structure of the coded video bitstream

This part of ISO/IEC 11172 specifies a syntax for a coded video bitstream. This syntax contains six layers, each of which either supports a signal processing or a system function:

Layers of the syntax	Function
Sequence layer	Random access unit: context
Group of pictures layer	Random access unit: video
Picture layer	Primary coding unit
Slice layer	Resynchronization unit
Macroblock layer	Motion compensation unit
Block layer	DCT unit

0.6 Features supported by the algorithm

Applications using compressed video on digital storage media need to be able to perform a number of operations in addition to normal forward playback of the sequence. The coded bitstream has been designed to support a number of these operations.

0.6.1 Random access

Random access is an essential feature for video on a storage medium. Random access requires that any picture can be decoded in a limited amount of time. It implies the existence of access points in the bitstream - that is segments of information that are identifiable and can be decoded without reference to other segments of data. A spacing of two random access points (Intra-Pictures) per second can be achieved without significant loss of picture quality.

0.6.2 Fast search

Depending on the storage medium, it is possible to scan the access points in a coded bitstream (with the help of an application-specific directory or other knowledge beyond the scope of this part of ISO/IEC 11172) to obtain a fast-forward and fast-reverse playback effect.

0.6.3 Reverse playback

Some applications may require the video signal to be played in reverse order. This can be achieved in a decoder by using memory to store entire groups of pictures after they have been decoded before being displayed in reverse order. An encoder can make this feature easier by reducing the length of groups of pictures.

0.6.4 Error robustness

Most digital storage media and communication channels are not error-free. Appropriate channel coding schemes should be used and are beyond the scope of this part of ISO/IEC 11172. Nevertheless the compression scheme defined in this part of ISO/IEC 11172 is robust to residual errors. The slice structure allows a decoder to recover after a data error and to resynchronize its decoding. Therefore, bit errors in the compressed data will cause errors in the decoded pictures to be limited in area. Decoders may be able to use concealment strategies to disguise these errors.

0.6.5 Editing

There is a conflict between the requirement for high coding efficiency and easy editing. The coding structure and syntax have not been designed with the primary aim of simplifying editing at any picture. Nevertheless a number of features have been included that enable editing of coded data.

This page intentionally left blank

Information technology — Coding of moving pictures and associated audio for digital storage media at up to about 1,5 Mbit/s —

Part 2:
Video

Section 1: General

1.1 Scope

This part of ISO/IEC 11172 specifies the coded representation of video for digital storage media and specifies the decoding process. The representation supports normal speed forward playback, as well as special functions such as random access, fast forward playback, fast reverse playback, normal speed reverse playback, pause and still pictures. This part of ISO/IEC 11172 is compatible with standard 525- and 625-line television formats, and it provides flexibility for use with personal computer and workstation displays.

ISO/IEC 11172 is primarily applicable to digital storage media supporting a continuous transfer rate up to about 1,5 Mbit/s, such as Compact Disc, Digital Audio Tape, and magnetic hard disks. Nevertheless it can be used more widely than this because of the generic approach taken. The storage media may be directly connected to the decoder, or via communications means such as busses, LANs, or telecommunications links. This part of ISO/IEC 11172 is intended for non-interlaced video formats having approximately 288 lines of 352 pels and picture rates around 24 Hz to 30 Hz.

1.2 Normative references

The following International Standards contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of this part of ISO/IEC 11172. At the time of publication, the editions indicated were valid. All standards are subject to revision, and parties to agreements based on this part of ISO/IEC 11172 are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the standards indicated below. Members of IEC and ISO maintain registers of currently valid International Standards.

ISO/IEC 11172-1:1993 *Information technology - Coding of moving pictures and associated audio for digital storage media at up to about 1,5 Mbit/s - Part 1: Systems.*

ISO/IEC 11172-3:1993 *Information technology - Coding of moving pictures and associated audio for digital storage media at up to about 1,5 Mbit/s - Part 3 Audio.*

CCIR Recommendation 601-2 *Encoding parameters of digital television for studios.*

CCIR Report 624-4 *Characteristics of systems for monochrome and colour television.*

CCIR Recommendation 648 *Recording of audio signals.*

CCIR Report 955-2 *Sound broadcasting by satellite for portable and mobile receivers, including Annex IV Summary description of Advanced Digital System II.*

CCITT Recommendation J.17 *Pre-emphasis used on Sound-Programme Circuits.*

IEEE Draft Standard P1180/D2 1990 *Specification for the implementation of 8x 8 inverse discrete cosine transform".*

IEC publication 908:1987 *CD Digital Audio System.*

Section 2: Technical elements

2.1 Definitions

For the purposes of ISO/IEC 11172, the following definitions apply. If specific to a part, this is noted in square brackets.

2.1.1 ac coefficient [video]: Any DCT coefficient for which the frequency in one or both dimensions is non-zero.

2.1.2 access unit [system]: In the case of compressed audio an access unit is an audio access unit. In the case of compressed video an access unit is the coded representation of a picture.

2.1.3 adaptive segmentation [audio]: A subdivision of the digital representation of an audio signal in variable segments of time.

2.1.4 adaptive bit allocation [audio]: The assignment of bits to subbands in a time and frequency varying fashion according to a psychoacoustic model.

2.1.5 adaptive noise allocation [audio]: The assignment of coding noise to frequency bands in a time and frequency varying fashion according to a psychoacoustic model.

2.1.6 alias [audio]: Mirrored signal component resulting from sub-Nyquist sampling.

2.1.7 analysis filterbank [audio]: Filterbank in the encoder that transforms a broadband PCM audio signal into a set of subsampled subband samples.

2.1.8 audio access unit [audio]: For Layers I and II an audio access unit is defined as the smallest part of the encoded bitstream which can be decoded by itself, where decoded means "fully reconstructed sound". For Layer III an audio access unit is part of the bitstream that is decodable with the use of previously acquired main information.

2.1.9 audio buffer [audio]: A buffer in the system target decoder for storage of compressed audio data.

2.1.10 audio sequence [audio]: A non-interrupted series of audio frames in which the following parameters are not changed:

- ID
- Layer
- Sampling Frequency
- For Layer I and II: Bitrate index

2.1.11 backward motion vector [video]: A motion vector that is used for motion compensation from a reference picture at a later time in display order.

2.1.12 Bark [audio]: Unit of critical band rate. The Bark scale is a non-linear mapping of the frequency scale over the audio range closely corresponding with the frequency selectivity of the human ear across the band.

2.1.13 bidirectionally predictive-coded picture; B-picture [video]: A picture that is coded using motion compensated prediction from a past and/or future reference picture.

2.1.14 bitrate: The rate at which the compressed bitstream is delivered from the storage medium to the input of a decoder.

2.1.15 block companding [audio]: Normalizing of the digital representation of an audio signal within a certain time period.

2.1.16 block [video]: An 8-row by 8-column orthogonal block of pels.

2.1.17 bound [audio]: The lowest subband in which intensity stereo coding is used.

2.1.18 byte aligned: A bit in a coded bitstream is byte-aligned if its position is a multiple of 8-bits from the first bit in the stream.

2.1.19 byte: Sequence of 8-bits.

2.1.20 channel: A digital medium that stores or transports an ISO/IEC 11172 stream.

2.1.21 channel [audio]: The left and right channels of a stereo signal

2.1.22 chrominance (component) [video]: A matrix, block or single pel representing one of the two colour difference signals related to the primary colours in the manner defined in CCIR Rec 601. The symbols used for the colour difference signals are Cr and Cb.

2.1.23 coded audio bitstream [audio]: A coded representation of an audio signal as specified in ISO/IEC 11172-3.

2.1.24 coded video bitstream [video]: A coded representation of a series of one or more pictures as specified in this part of ISO/IEC 11172.

2.1.25 coded order [video]: The order in which the pictures are stored and decoded. This order is not necessarily the same as the display order.

2.1.26 coded representation: A data element as represented in its encoded form.

2.1.27 coding parameters [video]: The set of user-definable parameters that characterize a coded video bitstream. Bitstreams are characterised by coding parameters. Decoders are characterised by the bitstreams that they are capable of decoding.

2.1.28 component [video]: A matrix, block or single pel from one of the three matrices (luminance and two chrominance) that make up a picture.

2.1.29 compression: Reduction in the number of bits used to represent an item of data.

2.1.30 constant bitrate coded video [video]: A compressed video bitstream with a constant average bitrate.

2.1.31 constant bitrate: Operation where the bitrate is constant from start to finish of the compressed bitstream.

2.1.32 constrained parameters [video]: The values of the set of coding parameters defined in 2.4.3.2.

2.1.33 constrained system parameter stream (CSPS) [system]: An ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream for which the constraints defined in 2.4.6 of ISO/IEC 11172-1 apply.

2.1.34 CRC: Cyclic redundancy code.

2.1.35 critical band rate [audio]: Psychoacoustic function of frequency. At a given audible frequency it is proportional to the number of critical bands below that frequency. The units of the critical band rate scale are Barks.

2.1.36 critical band [audio]: Psychoacoustic measure in the spectral domain which corresponds to the frequency selectivity of the human ear. This selectivity is expressed in Bark.

2.1.37 data element: An item of data as represented before encoding and after decoding.

2.1.38 dc-coefficient [video]: The DCT coefficient for which the frequency is zero in both dimensions.

2.1.39 dc-coded picture; D-picture [video]: A picture that is coded using only information from itself. Of the DCT coefficients in the coded representation, only the dc-coefficients are present.

2.1.40 DCT coefficient: The amplitude of a specific cosine basis function.

2.1.41 decoded stream: The decoded reconstruction of a compressed bitstream.

2.1.42 decoder input buffer [video]: The first-in first-out (FIFO) buffer specified in the video buffering verifier.

2.1.43 decoder input rate [video]: The data rate specified in the video buffering verifier and encoded in the coded video bitstream.

2.1.44 decoder: An embodiment of a decoding process.

2.1.45 decoding (process): The process defined in ISO/IEC 11172 that reads an input coded bitstream and produces decoded pictures or audio samples.

2.1.46 decoding time-stamp; DTS [system]: A field that may be present in a packet header that indicates the time that an access unit is decoded in the system target decoder.

2.1.47 de-emphasis [audio]: Filtering applied to an audio signal after storage or transmission to undo a linear distortion due to emphasis.

2.1.48 dequantization [video]: The process of rescaling the quantized DCT coefficients after their representation in the bitstream has been decoded and before they are presented to the inverse DCT.

2.1.49 digital storage media; DSM: A digital storage or transmission device or system.

2.1.50 discrete cosine transform; DCT [video]: Either the forward discrete cosine transform or the inverse discrete cosine transform. The DCT is an invertible, discrete orthogonal transformation. The inverse DCT is defined in annex A.

2.1.51 display order [video]: The order in which the decoded pictures should be displayed. Normally this is the same order in which they were presented at the input of the encoder.

2.1.52 dual channel mode [audio]: A mode, where two audio channels with independent programme contents (e.g. bilingual) are encoded within one bitstream. The coding process is the same as for the stereo mode.

2.1.53 editing: The process by which one or more compressed bitstreams are manipulated to produce a new compressed bitstream. Conforming edited bitstreams must meet the requirements defined in this part of ISO/IEC 11172.

2.1.54 elementary stream [system]: A generic term for one of the coded video, coded audio or other coded bitstreams.

2.1.55 emphasis [audio]: Filtering applied to an audio signal before storage or transmission to improve the signal-to-noise ratio at high frequencies.

2.1.56 encoder: An embodiment of an encoding process.

2.1.57 encoding (process): A process, not specified in ISO/IEC 11172, that reads a stream of input pictures or audio samples and produces a valid coded bitstream as defined in ISO/IEC 11172.

2.1.58 entropy coding: Variable length lossless coding of the digital representation of a signal to reduce redundancy.

2.1.59 fast forward playback [video]: The process of displaying a sequence, or parts of a sequence, of pictures in display-order faster than real-time.

2.1.60 FFT: Fast Fourier Transformation. A fast algorithm for performing a discrete Fourier transform (an orthogonal transform).

2.1.61 filterbank [audio]: A set of band-pass filters covering the entire audio frequency range.

2.1.62 fixed segmentation [audio]: A subdivision of the digital representation of an audio signal into fixed segments of time.

2.1.63 forbidden: The term "forbidden" when used in the clauses defining the coded bitstream indicates that the value shall never be used. This is usually to avoid emulation of start codes.

2.1.64 forced updating [video]: The process by which macroblocks are intra-coded from time-to-time to ensure that mismatch errors between the inverse DCT processes in encoders and decoders cannot build up excessively.

2.1.65 forward motion vector [video]: A motion vector that is used for motion compensation from a reference picture at an earlier time in display order.

2.1.66 frame [audio]: A part of the audio signal that corresponds to audio PCM samples from an Audio Access Unit.

2.1.67 free format [audio]: Any bitrate other than the defined bitrates that is less than the maximum valid bitrate for each layer.

2.1.68 future reference picture [video]: The future reference picture is the reference picture that occurs at a later time than the current picture in display order.

2.1.69 granules [Layer II] [audio]: The set of 3 consecutive subband samples from all 32 subbands that are considered together before quantization. They correspond to 96 PCM samples.

2.1.70 granules [Layer III] [audio]: 576 frequency lines that carry their own side information.

2.1.71 group of pictures [video]: A series of one or more coded pictures intended to assist random access. The group of pictures is one of the layers in the coding syntax defined in this part of ISO/IEC 11172.

2.1.72 Hann window [audio]: A time function applied sample-by-sample to a block of audio samples before Fourier transformation.

2.1.73 Huffman coding: A specific method for entropy coding.

2.1.74 hybrid filterbank [audio]: A serial combination of subband filterbank and MDCT.

2.1.75 IMDCT [audio]: Inverse Modified Discrete Cosine Transform.

2.1.76 intensity stereo [audio]: A method of exploiting stereo irrelevance or redundancy in stereophonic audio programmes based on retaining at high frequencies only the energy envelope of the right and left channels.

2.1.77 interlace [video]: The property of conventional television pictures where alternating lines of the picture represent different instances in time.

2.1.78 intra coding [video]: Coding of a macroblock or picture that uses information only from that macroblock or picture.

2.1.79 intra-coded picture; I-picture [video]: A picture coded using information only from itself.

2.1.80 ISO/IEC 11172 (multiplexed) stream [system]: A bitstream composed of zero or more elementary streams combined in the manner defined in ISO/IEC 11172-1.

2.1.81 joint stereo coding [audio]: Any method that exploits stereophonic irrelevance or stereophonic redundancy.

2.1.82 joint stereo mode [audio]: A mode of the audio coding algorithm using joint stereo coding.

2.1.83 layer [audio]: One of the levels in the coding hierarchy of the audio system defined in ISO/IEC 11172-3.

2.1.84 layer [video and systems]: One of the levels in the data hierarchy of the video and system specifications defined in ISO/IEC 11172-1 and this part of ISO/IEC 11172.

2.1.85 luminance (component) [video]: A matrix, block or single pel representing a monochrome representation of the signal and related to the primary colours in the manner defined in CCIR Rec 601. The symbol used for luminance is Y.

2.1.86 macroblock [video]: The four 8 by 8 blocks of luminance data and the two corresponding 8 by 8 blocks of chrominance data coming from a 16 by 16 section of the luminance component of the picture. Macroblock is sometimes used to refer to the pel data and sometimes to the coded representation of the pel values and other data elements defined in the macroblock layer of the syntax defined in this part of ISO/IEC 11172. The usage is clear from the context.

2.1.87 mapping [audio]: Conversion of an audio signal from time to frequency domain by subband filtering and/or by MDCT.

2.1.88 masking [audio]: A property of the human auditory system by which an audio signal cannot be perceived in the presence of another audio signal .

2.1.89 masking threshold [audio]: A function in frequency and time below which an audio signal cannot be perceived by the human auditory system.

2.1.90 MDCT [audio]: Modified Discrete Cosine Transform.

2.1.91 motion compensation [video]: The use of motion vectors to improve the efficiency of the prediction of pel values. The prediction uses motion vectors to provide offsets into the past and/or future reference pictures containing previously decoded pel values that are used to form the prediction error signal.

2.1.92 motion estimation [video]: The process of estimating motion vectors during the encoding process.

2.1.93 motion vector [video]: A two-dimensional vector used for motion compensation that provides an offset from the coordinate position in the current picture to the coordinates in a reference picture.

2.1.94 MS stereo [audio]: A method of exploiting stereo irrelevance or redundancy in stereophonic audio programmes based on coding the sum and difference signal instead of the left and right channels.

2.1.95 non-intra coding [video]: Coding of a macroblock or picture that uses information both from itself and from macroblocks and pictures occurring at other times.

2.1.96 non-tonal component [audio]: A noise-like component of an audio signal.

2.1.97 Nyquist sampling: Sampling at or above twice the maximum bandwidth of a signal.

2.1.98 pack [system]: A pack consists of a pack header followed by one or more packets. It is a layer in the system coding syntax described in ISO/IEC 11172-1.

2.1.99 packet data [system]: Contiguous bytes of data from an elementary stream present in a packet.

2.1.100 packet header [system]: The data structure used to convey information about the elementary stream data contained in the packet data.

2.1.101 packet [system]: A packet consists of a header followed by a number of contiguous bytes from an elementary data stream. It is a layer in the system coding syntax described in ISO/IEC 11172-1.

2.1.102 padding [audio]: A method to adjust the average length in time of an audio frame to the duration of the corresponding PCM samples, by conditionally adding a slot to the audio frame.

2.1.103 past reference picture [video]: The past reference picture is the reference picture that occurs at an earlier time than the current picture in display order.

2.1.104 pel aspect ratio [video]: The ratio of the nominal vertical height of pel on the display to its nominal horizontal width.

2.1.105 pel [video]: Picture element.

2.1.106 picture period [video]: The reciprocal of the picture rate.

2.1.107 picture rate [video]: The nominal rate at which pictures should be output from the decoding process.

2.1.108 picture [video]: Source, coded or reconstructed image data. A source or reconstructed picture consists of three rectangular matrices of 8-bit numbers representing the luminance and two chrominance signals. The Picture layer is one of the layers in the coding syntax defined in this part of ISO/IEC 11172. Note that the term "picture" is always used in ISO/IEC 11172 in preference to the terms field or frame.

2.1.109 polyphase filterbank [audio]: A set of equal bandwidth filters with special phase interrelationships, allowing for an efficient implementation of the filterbank.

2.1.110 prediction [video]: The use of a predictor to provide an estimate of the pel value or data element currently being decoded.

2.1.111 predictive-coded picture; P-picture [video]: A picture that is coded using motion compensated prediction from the past reference picture.

2.1.112 prediction error [video]: The difference between the actual value of a pel or data element and its predictor.

2.1.113 predictor [video]: A linear combination of previously decoded pel values or data elements.

2.1.114 presentation time-stamp; PTS [system]: A field that may be present in a packet header that indicates the time that a presentation unit is presented in the system target decoder.

2.1.115 presentation unit; PU [system]: A decoded audio access unit or a decoded picture.

2.1.116 psychoacoustic model [audio]: A mathematical model of the masking behaviour of the human auditory system.

2.1.117 quantization matrix [video]: A set of sixty-four 8-bit values used by the dequantizer.

2.1.118 quantized DCT coefficients [video]: DCT coefficients before dequantization. A variable length coded representation of quantized DCT coefficients is stored as part of the compressed video bitstream.

2.1.119 quantizer scalefactor [video]: A data element represented in the bitstream and used by the decoding process to scale the dequantization.

2.1.120 random access: The process of beginning to read and decode the coded bitstream at an arbitrary point.

2.1.121 reference picture [video]: Reference pictures are the nearest adjacent I- or P-pictures to the current picture in display order.

2.1.122 reorder buffer [video]: A buffer in the system target decoder for storage of a reconstructed I-picture or a reconstructed P-picture.

2.1.123 requantization [audio]: Decoding of coded subband samples in order to recover the original quantized values.

2.1.124 reserved: The term "reserved" when used in the clauses defining the coded bitstream indicates that the value may be used in the future for ISO/IEC defined extensions.

2.1.125 reverse playback [video]: The process of displaying the picture sequence in the reverse of display order.

2.1.126 scalefactor band [audio]: A set of frequency lines in Layer III which are scaled by one scalefactor.

2.1.127 scalefactor index [audio]: A numerical code for a scalefactor.

2.1.128 scalefactor [audio]: Factor by which a set of values is scaled before quantization.

2.1.129 sequence header [video]: A block of data in the coded bitstream containing the coded representation of a number of data elements.

2.1.130 side information: Information in the bitstream necessary for controlling the decoder.

2.1.131 skipped macroblock [video]: A macroblock for which no data are stored.

2.1.132 slice [video]: A series of macroblocks. It is one of the layers of the coding syntax defined in this part of ISO/IEC 11172.

2.1.133 slot [audio]: A slot is an elementary part in the bitstream. In Layer I a slot equals four bytes, in Layers II and III one byte.

2.1.134 source stream: A single non-multiplexed stream of samples before compression coding.

2.1.135 spreading function [audio]: A function that describes the frequency spread of masking.

2.1.136 start codes [system and video]: 32-bit codes embedded in that coded bitstream that are unique. They are used for several purposes including identifying some of the layers in the coding syntax.

2.1.137 STD input buffer [system]: A first-in first-out buffer at the input of the system target decoder for storage of compressed data from elementary streams before decoding.

2.1.138 stereo mode [audio]: Mode, where two audio channels which form a stereo pair (left and right) are encoded within one bitstream. The coding process is the same as for the dual channel mode.

2.1.139 stuffing (bits); stuffing (bytes) : Code-words that may be inserted into the compressed bitstream that are discarded in the decoding process. Their purpose is to increase the bitrate of the stream.

2.1.140 subband [audio]: Subdivision of the audio frequency band.

2.1.141 subband filterbank [audio]: A set of band filters covering the entire audio frequency range. In ISO/IEC 11172-3 the subband filterbank is a polyphase filterbank.

2.1.142 subband samples [audio]: The subband filterbank within the audio encoder creates a filtered and subsampled representation of the input audio stream. The filtered samples are called subband samples. From 384 time-consecutive input audio samples, 12 time-consecutive subband samples are generated within each of the 32 subbands.

2.1.143 syncword [audio]: A 12-bit code embedded in the audio bitstream that identifies the start of a frame.

2.1.144 synthesis filterbank [audio]: Filterbank in the decoder that reconstructs a PCM audio signal from subband samples.

2.1.145 system header [system]: The system header is a data structure defined in ISO/IEC 11172-1 that carries information summarising the system characteristics of the ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed stream.

2.1.146 system target decoder; STD [system]: A hypothetical reference model of a decoding process used to describe the semantics of an ISO/IEC 11172 multiplexed bitstream.

2.1.147 time-stamp [system]: A term that indicates the time of an event.

2.1.148 triplet [audio]: A set of 3 consecutive subband samples from one subband. A triplet from each of the 32 subbands forms a granule.

2.1.149 tonal component [audio]: A sinusoid-like component of an audio signal.

2.1.150 variable bitrate: Operation where the bitrate varies with time during the decoding of a compressed bitstream.

2.1.151 variable length coding; VLC: A reversible procedure for coding that assigns shorter code-words to frequent events and longer code-words to less frequent events.

2.1.152 video buffering verifier; VBV [video]: A hypothetical decoder that is conceptually connected to the output of the encoder. Its purpose is to provide a constraint on the variability of the data rate that an encoder or editing process may produce.

2.1.153 video sequence [video]: A series of one or more groups of pictures. It is one of the layers of the coding syntax defined in this part of ISO/IEC 11172.

2.1.154 zig-zag scanning order [video]: A specific sequential ordering of the DCT coefficients from (approximately) the lowest spatial frequency to the highest.

2.2 Symbols and abbreviations

The mathematical operators used to describe this International Standard are similar to those used in the C programming language. However, integer division with truncation and rounding are specifically defined. The bitwise operators are defined assuming twos-complement representation of integers. Numbering and counting loops generally begin from zero.

2.2.1 Arithmetic operators

+	Addition.
-	Subtraction (as a binary operator) or negation (as a unary operator).
++	Increment.
--	Decrement.
*	Multiplication.
^	Power.
/	Integer division with truncation of the result toward zero. For example, 7/4 and -7/-4 are truncated to 1 and -7/4 and 7/-4 are truncated to -1.
//	Integer division with rounding to the nearest integer. Half-integer values are rounded away from zero unless otherwise specified. For example 3//2 is rounded to 2, and -3//2 is rounded to -2.
DIV	Integer division with truncation of the result towards $-\infty$.
| |	Absolute value. $\|x\| = x$ when $x > 0$ $\|x\| = 0$ when $x = 0$ $\|x\| = -x$ when $x < 0$
%	Modulus operator. Defined only for positive numbers.
Sign( )	Sign(x) = 1 $x > 0$ 0 $x = 0$ -1 $x < 0$
NINT ( )	Nearest integer operator. Returns the nearest integer value to the real-valued argument. Half-integer values are rounded away from zero.
sin	Sine.
cos	Cosine.
exp	Exponential.
√	Square root.
$\log_{10}$	Logarithm to base ten.
$\log_e$	Logarithm to base e.
$\log_2$	Logarithm to base 2.

2.2.2 Logical operators

||	Logical OR.
&&	Logical AND.

! Logical NOT.

2.2.3 Relational operators

> Greater than.

>= Greater than or equal to.

< Less than.

<= Less than or equal to.

= Equal to.

!= Not equal to.

max [,...,] the maximum value in the argument list.

min [,...,] the minimum value in the argument list.

2.2.4 Bitwise operators

A twos complement number representation is assumed where the bitwise operators are used.

& AND.

| OR.

>> Shift right with sign extension.

<< Shift left with zero fill.

2.2.5 Assignment

= Assignment operator.

2.2.6 Mnemonics

The following mnemonics are defined to describe the different data types used in the coded bit-stream.

bslbf Bit string, left bit first, where "left" is the order in which bit strings are written in ISO/IEC 11172. Bit strings are written as a string of 1s and 0s within single quote marks, e.g. '1000 0001'. Blanks within a bit string are for ease of reading and have no significance.

ch Channel. If ch has the value 0, the left channel of a stereo signal or the first of two independent signals is indicated. (Audio)

nch Number of channels; equal to 1 for single_channel mode, 2 in other modes. (Audio)

gr Granule of 3 * 32 subband samples in audio Layer II, 18 * 32 sub-band samples in audio Layer III. (Audio)

main_data The main_data portion of the bitstream contains the scalefactors, Huffman encoded data, and ancillary information. (Audio)

main_data_beg The location in the bitstream of the beginning of the main_data for the frame. The location is equal to the ending location of the previous frame's main_data plus one bit. It is calculated from the main_data_end value of the previous frame. (Audio)

part2_length The number of main_data bits used for scalefactors. (Audio)

rpchof	Remainder polynomial coefficients, highest order first. (Audio)
sb	Subband. (Audio)
sblimit	The number of the lowest sub-band for which no bits are allocated. (Audio)
scfsi	Scalefactor selection information. (Audio)
switch_point_l	Number of scalefactor band (long block scalefactor band) from which point on window switching is used. (Audio)
switch_point_s	Number of scalefactor band (short block scalefactor band) from which point on window switching is used. (Audio)
uimsbf	Unsigned integer, most significant bit first.
vlclbf	Variable length code, left bit first, where "left" refers to the order in which the VLC codes are written.
window	Number of the actual time slot in case of block_type==2, $0 \leq$ window ≤ 2. (Audio)

The byte order of multi-byte words is most significant byte first.

2.2.7 Constants

π 3,14159265358...
e 2,71828182845...

2.3 Method of describing bitstream syntax

The bitstream retrieved by the decoder is described in 2.4.2. Each data item in the bitstream is in bold type. It is described by its name, its length in bits, and a mnemonic for its type and order of transmission.

The action caused by a decoded data element in a bitstream depends on the value of that data element and on data elements previously decoded. The decoding of the data elements and definition of the state variables used in their decoding are described in 2.4.3. The following constructs are used to express the conditions when data elements are present, and are in normal type:

Note this syntax uses the 'C'-code convention that a variable or expression evaluating to a non-zero value is equivalent to a condition that is true.

while (condition) {
  data_element
  . . .
}
	If the condition is true, then the group of data elements occurs next in the data stream. This repeats until the condition is not true.

do {
  data_element
  . . .
} while (condition)
	The data element always occurs at least once.
	The data element is repeated until the condition is not true.

if (condition) {
  data_element
  . . .
}
	If the condition is true, then the first group of data elements occurs next in the data stream.

else {
  data_element
  . . .
}
	If the condition is not true, then the second group of data elements occurs next in the data stream.

for (expr1; expr2; expr3) {	expr1 is an expression specifying the initialization of the loop. Normally it specifies the initial state of the counter. expr2 is a condition specifying a test made before each iteration of the loop. The loop terminates when the condition is not true. expr3 is an expression that is performed at the end of each iteration of the loop, normally it increments a counter.
data_element	
. . .	
}	

Note that the most common usage of this construct is as follows:

for (i = 0; i < n; i++) {	The group of data elements occurs n times. Conditional constructs within the group of data elements may depend on the value of the loop control variable i, which is set to zero for the first occurrence, incremented to one for the second occurrence, and so forth.
data_element	
. . .	
}	

As noted, the group of data elements may contain nested conditional constructs. For compactness, the { } may be omitted when only one data element follows.

data_element [ ]	data_element [] is an array of data. The number of data elements is indicated by the context.
data_element [n]	data_element [n] is the n+1th element of an array of data.
data_element [m][n]	data_element [m][n] is the m+1,n+1 th element of a two-dimensional array of data.
data_element [l][m][n]	data_element [l][m][n] is the l+1,m+1,n+1 th element of a three-dimensional array of data.
data_element [m..n]	is the inclusive range of bits between bit m and bit n in the data_element.

While the syntax is expressed in procedural terms, it should not be assumed that 2.4.3 implements a satisfactory decoding procedure. In particular, it defines a correct and error-free input bitstream. Actual decoders must include a means to look for start codes in order to begin decoding correctly, and to identify errors, erasures or insertions while decoding. The methods to identify these situations, and the actions to be taken, are not standardized.

Definition of bytealigned function

The function bytealigned () returns 1 if the current position is on a byte boundary, that is the next bit in the bitstream is the first bit in a byte. Otherwise it returns 0.

Definition of nextbits function

The function nextbits () permits comparison of a bit string with the next bits to be decoded in the bitstream.

Definition of next_start_code function

The next_start_code function removes any zero bit and zero byte stuffing and locates the next start code.

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
next_start_code() {		
while (!bytealigned())		
zero_bit	1	"0"
while (nextbits() != '0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001')		
zero_byte	8	"00000000"
}		

This function checks whether the current position is bytealigned. If it is not, zero stuffing bits are present. After that any number of zero bytes may be present before the start-code. Therefore start-codes are always bytealigned and may be preceded by any number of zero stuffing bits.

2.4 Requirements

2.4.1 Coding structure and parameters

Video sequence

A coded video sequence commences with a sequence header and is followed by one or more groups of pictures and is ended by a sequence_end_code. Immediately before each of the groups of pictures there may be a sequence header. Within each sequence, pictures shall be decodable continuously.

In each of these repeated sequence headers all of the data elements with the permitted exception of those defining the quantization matrices (load_intra_quantizer_matrix, load_non_intra_quantizer_matrix and optionally intra_quantizer_matrix and non_intra_quantizer_matrix) shall have the same values as in the first sequence header. The quantization matrices may be redefined each time that a sequence header occurs in the bitstream. Thus the data elements load_intra_quantizer_matrix, load_non_intra_quantizer_matrix and optionally intra_quantizer_matrix and non_intra_quantizer_matrix may have any (non-forbidden) values.

Repeating the sequence header allows the data elements of the initial sequence header to be repeated in order that random access into the video sequence is possible. In addition the quantization matrices may be changed inside the video sequence as required.

Sequence header

A video sequence header commences with a sequence_header_code and is followed by a series of data elements.

Group of pictures

A **group of pictures** is a series of one or more coded pictures intended to assist random access into the sequence. In the stored bitstream, the first coded picture in a group of pictures is an I-Picture. The order of the pictures in the coded stream is the order in which the decoder processes them in normal playback. In particular, adjacent B-Pictures in the coded stream are in display order. The last coded picture, in display order, of a group of pictures is either an I-Picture or a P-Picture.

The following is an example of groups of pictures taken from the beginning of a video sequence. In this example the first group of pictures contains seven pictures and subsequent groups of pictures contain nine pictures. There are two B-pictures between successive P-pictures and also two B-pictures between successive I- and P-pictures. Picture '1I' is used to form a prediction for picture '4P'. Pictures '4P' and '1I' are both used to form predictions for pictures '2B' and '3B'. Therefore the order of pictures in the coded sequence shall be '1I', '4P', '2B', '3B'. However, the decoder should display them in the order '1I', '2B', '3B', '4P'.

At the encoder input,

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
I	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B	I	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B	I	B	B	P	B	B	P

At the encoder output, in the stored bitstream, and at the decoder input,

1	4	2	3	7	5	6	10	8	9	13	11	12	16	14	15	19	17	18	22	20	21	25	23	24
I	P	B	B	P	B	B	I	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B	I	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B

where the double vertical bars mark the group of pictures boundaries. Note that in this example, the first group of pictures is two pictures shorter than subsequent groups of pictures, since at the beginning of video coding there are no B-pictures preceding the first I-Picture. However, in general, in display order, there may be B-Pictures preceding the first I-Picture in the group of pictures, even for the first group of pictures to be decoded.

At the decoder output,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25

A group of pictures may be of any length. A group of pictures shall contain one or more I-Pictures. Applications requiring random access, fast-forward playback, or fast and normal reverse playback may use relatively short groups of pictures. Groups of pictures may also be started at scene cuts or other cases where motion compensation is ineffective.

The number of consecutive B-Pictures is variable. Neither B- nor P-Pictures need be present.

A video sequence of groups of pictures that is read by the decoder may be different from the one at the encoder output due to editing.

Picture

A source or reconstructed picture consists of three rectangular matrices of eight-bit numbers; a luminance matrix (Y), and two chrominance matrices (Cb and Cr). The Y-matrix shall have an even number of rows and columns, and the Cb and Cr matrices shall be one half the size of the Y-matrix in both horizontal and vertical dimensions.

The Y, Cb and Cr components are related to the primary (analogue) Red, Green and Blue Signals (E'_R, E'_G and E'_B) as described in CCIR Recommendation 601. These primary signals are gamma pre-corrected. The assumed value of gamma is not defined in this part of ISO/IEC 11172 but may typically be in the region approximately 2,2 to approximately 2,8. Applications which require accurate colour reproduction may choose to specify the value of gamma more accurately, but this is outside the scope of this part of ISO/IEC 11172.

The luminance and chrominance samples are positioned as shown in figure 5, where "x" marks the position of the luminance (Y) samples and "0" marks the position of the chrominance (Cb and Cr) samples:

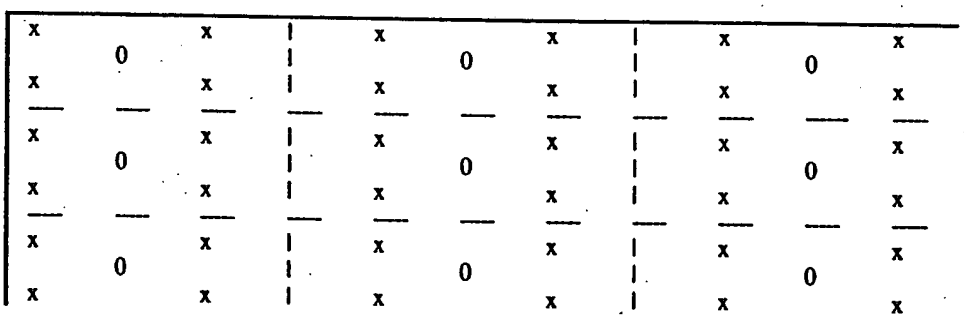


Figure 5 -- The position of luminance and chrominance samples.

There are four types of coded picture that use different coding methods.

An **Intra-coded picture (I-picture)** is coded using information only from itself.

A **Predictive-coded picture (P-picture)** is a picture which is coded using motion compensated prediction from a past I-Picture or P-Picture.

A **Bidirectionally predictive-coded picture (B-picture)** is a picture which is coded using motion compensated prediction from a past and/or future I-Picture or P-Picture.

A **dc coded (D) picture** is coded using information only from itself. Of the DCT coefficients only the dc ones are present. The D-Pictures shall not be in a sequence containing any other picture types.

Slice

A slice is a series of an arbitrary number of macroblocks with the order of macroblocks starting from the upper-left of the picture and proceeding by raster-scan order from left to right and top to bottom. The first and last macroblocks of a slice shall not be skipped macroblocks (see 2.4.4.4). Every slice shall contain at least one macroblock. Slices shall not overlap and there shall be no gaps between slices. The position of slices may change from picture to picture. The first slice shall start with the first macroblock in the picture and the last slice shall end with the last macroblock in the picture.

Macroblock

A macroblock contains a 16-pel by 16-line section of luminance component and the spatially corresponding 8-pel by 8-line section of each chrominance component. A macroblock has 4 luminance blocks and 2 chrominance blocks. The term "macroblock" can refer to source or reconstructed data or to scaled, quantized coefficients. The order of blocks in a macroblock is top-left, top-right, bottom-left, bottom-right blocks for Y, followed by Cb and Cr. Figure 6 shows the arrangement of these blocks. A skipped macroblock is one for which no information is stored (see 2.4.4.4).

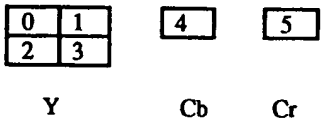


Figure 6 -- The arrangement of blocks in a macroblock.

Block

A block is an orthogonal 8-pel by 8-line section of a luminance or chrominance component.

The term "block" can refer either to source and reconstructed data or to the corresponding coded data elements.

Reserved, Forbidden and Marker bit

The terms "reserved" and "forbidden" are used in the description of some values of several fields in the coded bitstream.

The term "reserved" indicates that the value may be used in the future for ISO/IEC-defined extensions.

The term "forbidden" indicates a value that shall never be used (usually in order to avoid emulation of start codes).

The term "marker_bit" indicates a one bit field in which the value zero is forbidden. These marker bits are introduced at several points in the syntax to avoid start-code emulation.

2.4.2 Specification of the coded video bitstream syntax

2.4.2.1 Start codes

Start codes are reserved bit patterns that do not otherwise occur in the video stream. All start codes are bytealigned.

Name	Hexadecimal value
picture_start_code	00000100
slice_start_codes (including slice_vertical_positions)	00000101 through 000001AF
reserved	000001B0
reserved	000001B1
user_data_start_code	000001B2
sequence_header_code	000001B3
sequence_error_code	000001B4
extension_start_code	000001B5
reserved	000001B6
sequence_end_code	000001B7
group_start_code	000001B8
system start codes (see note)	000001B9 through 000001FF

NOTE - System start codes are defined in ISO/IEC 11172-1.

The use of the start codes is defined in the following syntax description with the exception of the sequence_error_code. The sequence_error_code has been allocated for use by the digital storage media interface to indicate where uncorrectable errors have been detected.

2.4.2.2 Video sequence layer

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
video_sequence() {		
next_start_code()		
do {		
sequence_header()		
do {		
group_of_pictures()		
} while (nextbits() == group_start_code)		
} while (nextbits() == sequence_header_code)		
sequence_end_code	**32**	**bslbf**
}		

2.4.2.3 Sequence header

Syntax	No.of bits	Mnemonic
sequence_header() {		
sequence_header_code	32	bslbf
horizontal_size	12	uimsbf
vertical_size	12	uimsbf
pel_aspect_ratio	4	uimsbf
picture_rate	4	uimsbf
bit_rate	18	uimsbf
marker_bit	1	"1"
vbv_buffer_size	10	uimsbf
constrained_parameters_flag	1	
load_intra_quantizer_matrix	1	
if (load_intra_quantizer_matrix)		
intra_quantizer_matrix []	8*64	uimsbf
load_non_intra_quantizer_matrix	1	
if (load_non_intra_quantizer_matrix)		
non_intra_quantizer_matrix []	8*64	uimsbf
next_start_code()		
if (nextbits() == extension_start_code) {		
extension_start_code	32	bslbf
while (nextbits () != '0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001') {		
sequence_extension_data	8	
}		
next_start_code()		
}		
if (nextbits() == user_data_start_code) {		
user_data_start_code	32	bslbf
while (nextbits() != '0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001') {		
user_data	8	
}		
next_start_code()		
}		
}		

2.4.2.4 Group of pictures layer

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
group_of_pictures() {		
group_start_code	**32**	**bslbf**
time_code	**25**	
closed_gop	**1**	
broken_link	**1**	
next_start_code()		
if (nextbits() == extension_start_code) {		
extension_start_code	**32**	**bslbf**
while (nextbits() != '0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001') {		
group_extension_data	**8**	
}		
next_start_code()		
}		
if (nextbits() == user_data_start_code) {		
user_data_start_code	**32**	**bslbf**
while (nextbits() != '0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001') {		
user_data	**8**	
}		
next_start_code()		
}		
do {		
picture()		
} while (nextbits() == picture_start_code)		
}		

2.4.2.5 Picture layer

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
picture() {		
picture_start_code	32	bslbf
temporal_reference	10	uimsbf
picture_coding_type	3	uimsbf
vbv_delay	16	uimsbf
if ((picture_coding_type == 2) || (picture_coding_type == 3)) {		
full_pel_forward_vector	1	
forward_f_code	3	uimsbf
}		
if (picture_coding_type == 3) {		
full_pel_backward_vector	1	
backward_f_code	3	uimsbf
}		
while (nextbits() == '1') {		
extra_bit_picture	1	"1"
extra_information_picture	8	
}		
extra_bit_picture	1	"0"
next_start_code()		
if (nextbits() == extension_start_code) {		
extension_start_code	32	bslbf
while (nextbits() != '0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001') {		
picture_extension_data	8	
}		
next_start_code()		
}		
if (nextbits() == user_data_start_code) {		
user_data_start_code	32	bslbf
while (nextbits() != '0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001') {		
user_data	8	
}		
next_start_code()		
}		
do {		
slice()		
} while (nextbits() == slice_start_code)		
}		

2.4.2.6 Slice layer

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
slice() {		
slice_start_code	32	bslbf
quantizer_scale	5	uimsbf
while (nextbits() == '1') {		
extra_bit_slice	1	"1"
extra_information_slice	8	
}		
extra_bit_slice	1	"0"
do {		
macroblock()		
} while (nextbits() != '000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000')		
next_start_code()		
}		

2.4.2.7 Macroblock layer

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
macroblock () {		
while (nextbits() == '0000 0001 111')		
macroblock_stuffing	11	vlclbf
while (nextbits() == '0000 0001 000')		
macroblock_escape	11	vlclbf
macroblock_address_increment	1-11	vlclbf
macroblock_type	1-6	vlclbf
if (macroblock_quant)		
quantizer_scale	5	uimsbf
if (macroblock_motion_forward) {		
motion_horizontal_forward_code	1-11	vlclbf
if ((forward_f != 1) &&		
(motion_horizontal_forward_code != 0))		
motion_horizontal_forward_r	1-6	uimsbf
motion_vertical_forward_code	1-11	vlclbf
if ((forward_f != 1) &&		
(motion_vertical_forward_code != 0))		
motion_vertical_forward_r	1-6	uimsbf
}		
if (macroblock_motion_backward) {		
motion_horizontal_backward_code	1-11	vlclbf
if ((backward_f != 1) &&		
(motion_horizontal_backward_code != 0))		
motion_horizontal_backward_r	1-6	uimsbf
motion_vertical_backward_code	1-11	vlclbf
if ((backward_f != 1) &&		
(motion_vertical_backward_code != 0))		
motion_vertical_backward_r	1-6	uimsbf
}		
if (macroblock_pattern)		
coded_block_pattern	3-9	vlclbf
for (i=0; i<6; i++)		
block(i)		
if (picture_coding_type == 4)		
end_of_macroblock	1	"1"
}		

2.4.2.8 Block layer

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
block(i) {		
if (pattern_code[i]) {		
if (macroblock_intra) {		
if (i<4) {		
dct_dc_size_luminance	**2-7**	**vlclbf**
if(dc_size_luminance != 0)		
dct_dc_differential	**1-8**	**uimsbf**
}		
else {		
dct_dc_size_chrominance	**2-8**	**vlclbf**
if(dc_size_chrominance !=0)		
dct_dc_differential	**1-8**	**uimsbf**
}		
}		
else {		
dct_coeff_first	**2-28**	**vlclbf**
}		
if (picture_coding_type != 4) {		
while (nextbits() != '10')		
dct_coeff_next	**3-28**	**vlclbf**
end_of_block	**2**	**vlclbf**
}		
}		
}		

2.4.3 Semantics for the video bitstream syntax

2.4.3.1 Video sequence layer

sequence_end_code -- The sequence_end_code is the bit string 000001B7 in hexadecimal. It terminates a video sequence.

2.4.3.2 Sequence header

sequence_header_code -- The sequence_header_code is the bit string 000001B3 in hexadecimal. It identifies the beginning of a sequence header.

horizontal_size -- The horizontal_size is the width of the displayable part of the luminance component in pels. The width of the encoded luminance component in macroblocks, mb_width, is (horizontal_size+15)/16. The displayable part of the picture is left-aligned in the encoded picture.

vertical_size -- The vertical_size is the height of the displayable part of the luminance component in pels. The height of the encoded luminance component in macroblocks, mb_height, is (vertical_size+15)/16. The displayable part of the picture is top-aligned in the encoded picture.

pel_aspect_ratio -- This is a four-bit integer defined in the following table.

pel_aspect_ratio	height/width	example
0000	forbidden	
0001	1,0000	VGA etc.
0010	0,6735	
0011	0,7031	16:9, 625line
0100	0,7615	
0101	0,8055	
0110	0,8437	16:9, 525line
0111	0,8935	
1000	0,9157	CCIR601, 625line
1001	0,9815	
1010	1,0255	
1011	1,0695	
1100	1,0950	CCIR601, 525line
1101	1,1575	
1110	1,2015	
1111	reserved	

picture_rate -- This is a four-bit integer defined in the following table.

picture_rate	pictures per second
0000	forbidden
0001	23,976
0010	24
0011	25
0100	29,97
0101	30
0110	50
0111	59,94
1000	60
. . .	reserved
1111	reserved

Applications and encoders should take into account the fact that 23,976, 29,97 and 59,94 are not exact representations of the nominal picture rate. The exact values are found from 24 000/1 001, 30 000/1 001, and 60 000/1 001 and can be derived from CCIR Report 624-4.

bit_rate -- This is an integer specifying the bitrate of the bitstream measured in units of 400 bits/s, rounded upwards. The value zero is forbidden. The value 3FFFF (11 1111 1111 1111 1111) identifies variable bit rate operation.

marker_bit -- This is one bit that shall be set to "1".

vbv_buffer_size -- This is a 10-bit integer defining the size of the VBV (Video Buffering Verifier, see annex C) buffer needed to decode the sequence. It is defined as:

$$B = 16 * 1\,024 * vbv\_buffer\_size$$

where B is the minimum VBV buffer size in bits required to decode the sequence (see annex C).

constrained_parameters_flag -- This is a one-bit flag which may be set to "1" if the following data elements meet the following constraints:

horizontal_size <= 768 pels,
vertical_size <= 576 pels,
((horizontal_size+15)/16) *((vertical_size+15)/16) <= 396,
((horizontal_size+15)/16) *((vertical_size+15)/16))*picture_rate <= 396*25,
picture_rate <= 30 pictures/s.
forward_f_code <= 4 (see 2.4.3.4)
backward_f_code <= 4 (see 2.4.3.4)

If the constrained_parameters_flag is set, then the vbv_buffer_size field shall indicate a VBV buffer size less than or equal to 327 680 bits (20*1024*16; i.e. 40 kbytes).

If the constrained_parameters_flag is set, then the bit_rate field shall indicate a coded data rate less than or equal to 1 856 000 bits/s.

load_intra_quantizer_matrix -- This is a one-bit flag which is set to "1" if an intra_quantizer_matrix follows. If it is set to "0" then the default values defined below in raster-scan order, are used until the next occurence of the sequence header.

8	16	19	22	26	27	29	34
16	16	22	24	27	29	34	37
19	22	26	27	29	34	34	38
22	22	26	27	29	34	37	40
22	26	27	29	32	35	40	48
26	27	29	32	35	40	48	58
26	27	29	34	38	46	56	69
27	29	35	38	46	56	69	83

intra_quantizer_matrix -- This is a list of sixty-four 8-bit unsigned integers. The new values, stored in the zigzag scanning order shown in 2.4.4.1, replace the default values shown above. The value zero is forbidden. The value for intra_quant[0][0] shall always be 8. The new values shall be in effect until the next occurence of a sequence header.

load_non_intra_quantizer_matrix -- This is a one-bit flag which is set to "1" if a non_intra_quantizer_matrix follows. If it is set to "0" then the default values defined below are used until the next occurence of the sequence header.

16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16

non_intra_quantizer_matrix -- This is a list of sixty-four 8-bit unsigned integers. The new values, stored in the zigzag scanning order shown in 2.4.4.1, replace the default values shown above. The value zero is forbidden. The new values shall be in effect until the next occurence of a sequence header.

extension_start_code -- The extension_start_code is the bit string 000001B5 in hexadecimal. It identifies the beginning of extension data. The extension data continue until receipt of another start code. It is a requirement to parse extension data correctly.

sequence_extension_data -- Reserved.

user_data_start_code -- The user_data_start_code is the bit string 000001B2 in hexadecimal. It identifies the beginning of user data. The user data continues until receipt of another start code.

user_data -- The user_data is defined by the users for their specific applications. The user data shall not contain a string of 23 or more zero bits.

2.4.3.3 Group of pictures layer

group_start_code -- The group_start_code is the bit string 000001B8 in hexadecimal. It identifies the beginning of a group of pictures.

time_code -- This is a 25-bit field containing the following: drop_frame_flag, time_code_hours, time_code_minutes, marker_bit, time_code_seconds and time_code_pictures. The fields correspond to the fields defined in the IEC standard (Publication 461) for "time and control codes for video tape recorders" (see annex E). The code refers to the first picture in the group of pictures that has a temporal_reference of zero. The drop_frame_flag can be set to either "0" or "1". It may be set to "1" only if the picture rate is 29,97Hz. If it is "0" then pictures are counted assuming rounding to the nearest integral number of pictures per second, for example 29,97 Hz would be rounded to and counted as 30 Hz. If it is "1" then picture numbers 0 and 1 at the start of each minute, except minutes 0, 10, 20, 30, 40, 50 are omitted from the count.

time_code	range of value	bits	
drop_frame_flag		1	
time_code_hours	0 - 23	5	uimsbf
time_code_minutes	0 - 59	6	uimsbf
marker_bit	1	1	"1"
time_code_seconds	0 - 59	6	uimsbf
time_code_pictures	0 - 59	6	uimsbf

closed_gop -- This is a one-bit flag which may be set to "1" if the group of pictures has been encoded without motion vectors pointing to the previous group of pictures.

This bit is provided for use during any editing which occurs after encoding. If the previous group of pictures is removed by editing, **broken_link** may be set to "1" so that a decoder may avoid displaying the B-Pictures immediately following the first I-Picture of the group of pictures. However if the **closed_gop** bit indicates that there are no prediction references to the previous group of pictures then the editor may choose not to set the **broken_link** bit as these B-Pictures can be correctly decoded in this case.

broken_link -- This is a one-bit flag which shall be set to "0" during encoding. It is set to "1" to indicate that the B-Pictures immediately following the first I-Picture of a group of pictures cannot be correctly decoded because the other I-Picture or P-Picture which is used for prediction is not available (because of the action of editing).

A decoder may use this flag to avoid displaying pictures that cannot be correctly decoded.

extension_start_code -- See 2.4.3.2.

group_extension_data -- Reserved.

user_data_start_code -- See 2.4.3.2.

user_data -- See 2.4.3.2.

2.4.3.4 Picture layer

picture_start_code -- The picture_start_code is a string of 32-bits having the value 00000100 in hexadecimal.

temporal_reference -- The temporal_reference is a 10-bit unsigned integer associated with each input picture. It is incremented by one, modulo 1024, for each input picture. For the earliest picture (in display order) in each group of pictures, the temporal_reference is reset to zero.

The temporal_reference is assigned (in sequence) to the pictures in display order, no temporal_reference shall be omitted from the sequence.

picture_coding_type -- The picture_coding_type identifies whether a picture is an intra-coded picture(I), predictive-coded picture(P), bidirectionally predictive-coded picture(B), or intra-coded with only dc coefficients picture(D) according to the following table. D-pictures shall never be included in the same video sequence as the other picture coding types.

picture_coding_type	coding method
000	forbidden
001	intra-coded (I)
010	predictive-coded (P)
011	bidirectionally-predictive-coded (B)
100	dc intra-coded (D)
101	reserved
...	...
111	reserved

vbv_delay -- The vbv_delay is a 16-bit unsigned integer. For constant bitrate operation, the vbv_delay is used to set the initial occupancy of the decoder's buffer at the start of decoding the picture so that the decoder's buffer does not overflow or underflow. The vbv_delay measures the time needed to fill the VBV buffer from an initially empty state at the target bit rate, R, to the correct level immediately before the current picture is removed from the buffer.

The value of vbv_delay is the number of periods of the 90kHz system clock that the VBV should wait after receiving the final byte of the picture start code. It may be calculated from the state of the VBV as follows:

$$vbv\_delay_n = 90\,000 * B_n^* / R$$

where:

$n > 0$

B_n^* = VBV occupancy, measured in bits, immediately before removing picture n from the buffer but after removing any group of picture layer data, sequence header data and the **picture_start_code** that immediately precedes the data elements of picture n.

R = bitrate measured in bits/s. The full precision of the bitrate rather than the rounded value encoded by the **bit_rate** field in the sequence header shall be used by the encoder in the VBV model.

For non-constant bitrate operation vbv_delay shall have the value FFFF in hexadecimal.

full_pel_forward_vector -- If set to "1", then the motion vector values decoded represent integer pel offsets (rather than half-pel units) as reflected in the equations of 2.4.4.2.

forward_f_code -- An unsigned integer taking values 1 through 7. The value zero is forbidden. The variables forward_r_size and forward_f used in the process of decoding the forward motion vectors are derived from **forward_f_code** as described in 2.4.4.2

full_pel_backward_vector -- If set to "1", then the motion vector values decoded represent integer pel offsets (rather than half pel units) as reflected in the equations of 2.4.4.3.

backward_f_code -- An unsigned integer taking values 1 through 7. The value zero is forbidden. The variables backward_r_size and backward_f used in the process of decoding the backward motion vectors are derived from **backward_f_code** as described in 2.4.4.3.

extra_bit_picture -- A bit indicates the presence of the following extra information. If extra_bit_picture is set to "1", extra_information_picture will follow it. If it is set to "0", there are no data following it.

extra_information_picture -- Reserved.

extension_start_code -- See 2.4.3.2.

picture_extension_data -- Reserved.

user_data_start_code -- See 2.4.3.2.

user_data -- See 2.4.3.2.

2.4.3.5 Slice layer

slice_start_code -- The slice_start_code is a string of 32-bits. The first 24-bits have the value 000001 in hexadecimal and the last 8-bits are the slice_vertical_position having a value in the range 01 through AF hexadecimal inclusive.

slice_vertical_position -- This is given by the last eight bits of the slice_start_code. It is an unsigned integer giving the vertical position in macroblock units of the first macroblock in the slice. The slice_vertical_position of the first row of macroblocks is one. Some slices may have the same slice_vertical_position, since slices may start and finish anywhere. Note that the slice_vertical_position is constrained by 2.4.1 to define non-overlapping slices with no gaps between them. The maximum value of slice_vertical_position is 175.

quantizer_scale -- An unsigned integer in the range 1 to 31 used to scale the reconstruction level of the retrieved DCT coefficient levels. The decoder shall use this value until another quantizer_scale is encountered either at the slice layer or the macroblock layer. The value zero is forbidden.

extra_bit_slice -- A bit indicates the presence of the following extra information. If extra_bit_slice is set to "1", extra_information_slice will follow it. If it is set to "0", there are no data following it.

extra_information_slice -- Reserved.

2.4.3.6 Macroblock layer

macroblock_stuffing -- This is a fixed bit string "0000 0001 111" which can be inserted by the encoder to increase the bit rate to that required of the storage or transmission medium. It is discarded by the decoder.

macroblock_escape -- The macroblock_escape is a fixed bit-string "0000 0001 000" which is used when the difference between macroblock_address and previous_macroblock_address is greater than 33. It causes the value of macroblock_address_increment to be 33 greater than the value that will be decoded by subsequent macroblock_escapes and the macroblock_address_increment codewords.

For example, if there are two macroblock_escape codewords preceding the macroblock_address_increment, then 66 is added to the value indicated by macroblock_address_increment.

macroblock_address_increment -- This is a variable length coded integer coded as per table B.1 which indicates the difference between macroblock_address and previous_macroblock_address. The maximum value of macroblock_address_increment is 33. Values greater than this can be encoded using the macroblock_escape codeword.

The macroblock_address is a variable defining the absolute position of the current macroblock. The macroblock_address of the top-left macroblock is zero.

The previous_macroblock_address is a variable defining the absolute position of the last non-skipped macroblock (see 2.4.4.4 for the definition of skipped macroblocks) except at the start of a slice. At the start of a slice, previous_macroblock_address is reset as follows:

previous_macroblock_address=(slice_vertical_position-1)*mb_width-1;

The spatial position in macroblock units of a macroblock in the picture (mb_row, mb_column) can be computed from the macroblock_address as follows:

mb_row = macroblock_address / mb_width
mb_column = macroblock_address % mb_width

where mb_width is the number of macroblocks in one row of the picture.

NOTE - The slice_vertical_position differs from mb_row by one.

macroblock_type -- Variable length coded indicator which indicates the method of coding and content of the macroblock according to the tables B.2a through B.2d.

macroblock_quant -- Derived from macroblock_type.

macroblock_motion_forward -- Derived from macroblock_type.

macroblock_motion_backward -- Derived from macroblock_type.

macroblock_pattern -- Derived from macroblock_type.

macroblock_intra -- Derived from macroblock_type.

quantizer_scale -- An unsigned integer in the range 1 to 31 used to scale the reconstruction level of the retrieved DCT coefficient levels. The value zero is forbidden. The decoder shall use this value until another quantizer_scale is encountered either at the slice layer or the macroblock layer. The presence of quantizer_scale is determined from macroblock_type.

motion_horizontal_forward_code -- motion_horizontal_forward_code is decoded according to table B.4. The decoded value is required (along with forward_f - see 2.4.4.2) to decide whether or not motion_horizontal_forward_r appears in the bitstream.

motion_horizontal_forward_r -- An unsigned integer (of forward_r_size bits - see 2.4.4.2) used in the process of decoding forward motion vectors as described in 2.4.4.2.

motion_vertical_forward_code -- motion_vertical_forward_code is decoded according to table B.4. The decoded value is required (along with forward_f - see 2.4.4.2) to decide whether or not motion_vertical_forward_r appears in the bitstream.

motion_vertical_forward_r -- An unsigned integer (of forward_r_size bits - see 2.4.4.2) used in the process of decoding forward motion vectors as described in 2.4.4.2.

motion_horizontal_backward_code -- motion_horizontal_backward_code is decoded according to table B.4. The decoded value is required (along with backward_f - see 2.4.4.2) to decide whether or not motion_horizontal_backward_r appears in the bitstream.

motion_horizontal_backward_r -- An unsigned integer (of backward_r_size bits - see 2.4.4.2) used in the process of decoding backward motion vectors as described in 2.4.4.2.

motion_vertical_backward_code -- motion_vertical_backward_code is decoded according to table B.4. The decoded value is required (along with backward_f) to decide whether or not motion_vertical_backward_r appears in the bitstream.

motion_vertical_backward_r -- An unsigned integer (of backward_r_size bits) used in the process of decoding backward motion vectors as described in 2.4.4.3.

coded_block_pattern -- coded_block_pattern is a variable length code that is used to derive the variable cbp according to table B.3. If macroblock_intra is zero, cbp=0. Then the pattern_code[i] for i=0 to 5 is derived from cbp using the following:

```
pattern_code[i] = 0;
if ( cbp & (1<<(5-i)) ) pattern_code[i] = 1;
if ( macroblock_intra ) pattern_code[i] = 1 ;
```

pattern_code[0] -- If 1, then the upper left luminance block is to be received in this macroblock.

pattern_code[1] -- If 1, then the upper right luminance block is to be received in this macroblock.

pattern_code[2] -- If 1, then the lower left luminance block is to be received in this macroblock.

pattern_code[3] -- If 1, then the lower right luminance block is to be received in this macroblock..

pattern_code[4] -- If 1, then the chrominance block Cb is to be received in this macroblock.

pattern_code[5] -- If 1, then the chrominance block Cr is to be received in this macroblock.

end_of_macroblock -- This is a bit which is set to "1" and exists only in D-Pictures.

2.4.3.7 Block layer

dct_dc_size_luminance -- The number of bits in the following dct_dc_differential code, dc_size_luminance, is derived according to the VLC table B.5a. Note that this data element is used in intra coded blocks.

dct_dc_size_chrominance -- The number of bits in the following dct_dc_differential code, dc_size_chrominance, is derived according to the VLC table B.5b. Note that this data element is used in intra coded blocks.

dct_dc_differential -- A variable length unsigned integer. If dc_size_luminance or dc_size_chrominance (as appropriate) is zero, then dct_dc_differential is not present in the bitstream. dct_zz [] is the array of quantized DCT coefficients in zig-zag scanning order. dct_zz[i] for i=0..63 shall be set to zero initially. If dc_size_luminance or dc_size_chrominance (as appropriate) is greater than zero, then dct_zz[0] is computed as follows from dct_dc_differential:

For luminance blocks:

```
if ( dct_dc_differential & ( 1 << (dc_size_luminance-1)) ) dct_zz[0] = dct_dc_differential ;
else dct_zz[0] = ( (-1) << (dc_size_luminance) ) | (dct_dc_differential+1) ;
```

For chrominance blocks:

```
if ( dct_dc_differential & ( 1 << (dc_size_chrominance-1)) ) dct_zz[0] = dct_dc_differential ;
else dct_zz[0] = ( (-1) << (dc_size_chrominance) ) | (dct_dc_differential+1) ;
```

Note that this data element is used in intra coded blocks.

example for dc_size_luminance = 3	
dct_dc_differential	dct_zz[0]
000	-7
001	-6
010	-5
011	-4
100	4
101	5
110	6
111	7

dct_coeff_first -- A variable length code according to tables B.5c through B.5f for the first coefficient. The variables run and level are derived according to these tables. The zigzag-scanned quantized DCT coefficient list is updated as follows.

```
i = run ;
if ( s == 0 ) dct_zz[i] = level ;
if ( s == 1 ) dct_zz[i] = - level ;
```

The terms dct_coeff_first and dct_coeff_next are run-length encoded and dct_zz[i], i>=0 shall be set to zero initially. A variable length code according to tables B.5c through B.5f is used to represent the run-length and level of the DCT coefficients. Note that this data element is used in non-intra coded blocks.

dct_coeff_next -- A variable length code according to tables B.5c through B.5f for coefficients following the first retrieved. The variables run and level are derived according to these tables. The zigzag-scanned quantized DCT coefficient list is updated as follows.

```
i = i + run +1 ;
if ( s == 0 ) dct_zz[i] = level ;
if ( s == 1 ) dct_zz[i] = - level ;
```

If macroblock_intra == 1 then the term i shall be set to zero before the first dct_coeff_next of the block. The decoding of dct_coeff_next shall not cause i to exceed 63.

end_of_block -- This symbol is always used to indicate that no additional non-zero coefficients are present. It is used even if dct_zz[63] is non-zero. Its value is the bit-string "10" as defined in table B.5c.

2.4.4 The video decoding process

Compliance requirements for decoders are contained in ISO/IEC 11172-4.

2.4.4.1 Intra-coded macroblocks

In I-pictures all macroblocks are intra-coded and stored. In P-pictures and B-pictures, some macroblocks may be intra-coded as identified by macroblock_type. Thus, macroblock_intra identifies the intra-coded macroblocks.

The variables mb_row and mb_column locate the macroblock in the picture. They are defined in 2.4.3.6. The definitions of dct_dc_differential, and dct_coeff_next also have defined the zigzag-scanned quantized DCT coefficient list, dct_zz[]. Each dct_zz[] is located in the macroblock as defined by pattern_code[].

Define dct_recon[m][n] to be the matrix of reconstructed DCT coefficients of the block, where the first index identifies the row and the second the column of the matrix. Define dct_dc_y_past, dct_dc_cb_past and dct_dc_cr_past to be the dct_recon[0][0] of the most recently decoded intra-coded Y, Cb and Cr blocks respectively. The predictors dct_dc_y_past, dct_dc_cb_past and dct_dc_cr_past shall all be reset at the start of a slice and at non-intra-coded macroblocks (including skipped macroblocks) to the value 1 024 (128*8).

Define intra_quant[m][n] to be the intra quantizer matrix that is specified in the sequence header.

Note that intra_quant[0][0] is used in the dequantizer calculations for simplicity of description, but the result is overwritten by the subsequent calculation for the dc coefficient.

Define scan[m][n] to be the matrix defining the zigzag scanning sequence as follows:

0	1	5	6	14	15	27	28
2	4	7	13	16	26	29	42
3	8	12	17	25	30	41	43
9	11	18	24	31	40	44	53
10	19	23	32	39	45	52	54
20	22	33	38	46	51	55	60
21	34	37	47	50	56	59	61
35	36	48	49	57	58	62	63

Where n is the horizontal index and m is the vertical index.

Define past_intra_address as the macroblock_address of the most recently retrieved intra-coded macroblock within the slice. It shall be reset to -2 at the beginning of each slice.

Then dct_recon[m][n] shall be computed by any means equivalent to the following procedure for the first luminance block:

```
for (m=0; m<8; m++) {
        for (n=0; n<8; n++) {
                i = scan[m][n] ;
                dct_recon[m][n] = ( 2 * dct_zz[i] * quantizer_scale * intra_quant[m][n] ) /16 ;
                if ( ( dct_recon[m][n] & 1 ) == 0 )
                        dct_recon[m][n] = dct_recon[m][n] - Sign(dct_recon[m][n]) ;
                if (dct_recon[m][n] > 2 047)  dct_recon[m][n] = 2 047 ;
                if (dct_recon[m][n] < -2 048)  dct_recon[m][n] = -2 048 ;
        }
}
dct_recon[0][0] = dct_zz[0] * 8 ;
if ( ( macroblock_address - past_intra_address > 1) )
        dct_recon[0][0] = (128 * 8) + dct_recon[0][0] ;
else
        dct_recon[0][0] = dct_dc_y_past + dct_recon[0][0] ;
dct_dc_y_past = dct_recon[0][0] ;
```

Note that this process disallows even valued numbers. This has been found to prevent accumulation of mismatch errors.

For the subsequent luminance blocks in the macroblock, in the order of the list defined by the array pattern_code[]:

```
for (m=0; m<8; m++) {
        for (n=0; n<8; n++) {
                i = scan[m][n] ;
                dct_recon[m][n] = ( 2 * dct_zz[i] * quantizer_scale * intra_quant[m][n] ) /16 ;
                if ( ( dct_recon[m][n] & 1 ) == 0 )
                        dct_recon[m][n] = dct_recon[m][n] - Sign(dct_recon[m][n]) ;
                if (dct_recon[m][n] > 2 047)  dct_recon[m][n] = 2 047 ;
                if (dct_recon[m][n] < -2 048)  dct_recon[m][n] = -2 048 ;
        }
}
dct_recon[0][0] = dct_dc_y_past + (dct_zz[0] * 8) ;
dct_dc_y_past = dct_recon[0][0] ;
```

For the chrominance Cb block,:

```
for (m=0; m<8; m++) {
        for (n=0; n<8; n++) {
                i = scan[m][n] ;
                dct_recon[m][n] = ( 2 * dct_zz[i] * quantizer_scale * intra_quant[m][n] ) /16 ;
                if ( ( dct_recon[m][n] & 1 ) == 0 )
                        dct_recon[m][n] = dct_recon[m][n] - Sign(dct_recon[m][n]) ;
                if (dct_recon[m][n] > 2 047)  dct_recon[m][n] = 2 047 ;
                if (dct_recon[m][n] < -2 048)  dct_recon[m][n] = -2 048 ;
        }
}
dct_recon[0][0] = dct_zz[0] * 8 ;
if ( ( macroblock_address - past_intra_address ) > 1 )
        dct_recon[0][0] = (128 * 8) + dct_recon[0][0] ;
else
        dct_recon[0][0] = dct_dc_cb_past + dct_recon[0][0] ;
dct_dc_cb_past = dct_recon[0][0] ;
```

For the chrominance Cr block, :

```
for (m=0; m<8; m++) {
        for (n=0; n<8; n++) {
                i = scan[m][n] ;
                dct_recon[m][n] = ( 2 * dct_zz[i] * quantizer_scale * intra_quant[m][n] ) /16 ;
                if ( ( dct_recon[m][n] & 1 ) == 0 )
                        dct_recon[m][n] = dct_recon[m][n] - Sign(dct_recon[m][n]) ;
                if (dct_recon[m][n] > 2 047)  dct_recon[m][n] = 2 047 ;
                if (dct_recon[m][n] < -2 048)  dct_recon[m][n] = -2 048 ;
        }
}
dct_recon[0][0] = dct_zz[0] * 8 ;
if ( ( macroblock_address - past_intra_address ) > 1 )
        dct_recon[0][0] = (128 * 8) + dct_recon[0][0] ;
else
        dct_recon[0][0] = dct_dc_cr_past + dct_recon[0][0] ;
dct_dc_cr_past = dct_recon[0][0] ;
```

After all the blocks in the macroblock are processed:

```
past_intra_address = macroblock_address ;
```

Values in the coded data elements leading to dct_recon[0][0] < 0 or dct_recon[0][0] > 2 047 are not permitted.

Once the DCT coefficients are reconstructed, the inverse DCT transform defined in annex A shall be applied to obtain the inverse transformed pel values in the range [-256, 255]. These pel values shall be limited to

the range [0, 255] and placed in the luminance and chrominance matrices in the positions defined by mb_row , mb_column, and the list defined by the array pattern_code[].

2.4.4.2 Predictive-coded macroblocks in P-pictures

Predictive-coded macroblocks in P-Pictures are decoded in two steps.

First, the value of the forward motion vector for the macroblock is reconstructed and a prediction macroblock is formed, as detailed below.

Second, the DCT coefficient information stored for some or all of the blocks is decoded, dequantized, inverse DCT transformed, and added to the prediction macroblock.

Let **recon_right_for** and **recon_down_for** be the reconstructed horizontal and vertical components of the motion vector for the current macroblock, and recon_right_for_prev and recon_down_for_prev be the reconstructed motion vector for the previous predictive-coded macroblock. If the current macroblock is the first macroblock in the slice, or if the last macroblock that was decoded contained no motion vector information (either because it was skipped or macroblock_motion_forward was zero), then recon_right_for_prev and recon_down_for_prev shall be set to zero.

If no forward motion vector data exists for the current macroblock (either because it was skipped or macroblock_motion_forward == 0), the motion vectors shall be set to zero.

If forward motion vector data exists for the current macroblock, then any means equivalent to the following procedure shall be used to reconstruct the motion vector horizontal and vertical components.

forward_r_size and forward_f are derived from forward_f_code as follows:

```
        forward_r_size = forward_f_code - 1
        forward_f = 1 << forward_r_size

if ( (forward_f == 1) || (motion_horizontal_forward_code == 0) ) {
        complement_horizontal_forward_r = 0;
} else {
        complement_horizontal_forward_r = forward_f - 1 - motion_horizontal_forward_r;
}
if ( (forward_f == 1) || (motion_vertical_forward_code == 0) ) {
        complement_vertical_forward_r = 0;
} else {
        complement_vertical_forward_r = forward_f - 1 - motion_vertical_forward_r;
}

right_little = motion_horizontal_forward_code * forward_f;
if (right_little == 0) {
        right_big = 0;
} else {
        if (right_little > 0) {
                right_little = right_little - complement_horizontal_forward_r ;
                right_big = right_little - (32 * forward_f);
        } else {
                right_little = right_little + complement_horizontal_forward_r ;
                right_big = right_little + (32 * forward_f);
        }
}
```

```
down_little = motion_vertical_forward_code * forward_f;
if (down_little == 0) {
        down_big = 0;
} else {
        if (down_little > 0) {
                down_little = down_little - complement_vertical_forward_r ;
                down_big = down_little - (32 * forward_f);
        } else {
                down_little = down_little + complement_vertical_forward_r ;
                down_big = down_little + (32 * forward_f);
        }
}
```

Values of forward_f, motion_horizontal_forward_code and if present, motion_horizontal_forward_r shall be such that right_little is not equal to forward_f * 16.

Values of forward_f, motion_vertical_forward_code and if present, motion_vertical_forward_r shall be such that down_little is not equal to forward_f * 16.

```
max = ( 16 * forward_f ) - 1 ;
min = ( -16 * forward_f ) ;

new_vector = recon_right_for_prev + right_little ;
if ( (new_vector <= max) &&  (new_vector >= min) )
        recon_right_for = recon_right_for_prev + right_little ;
else
        recon_right_for = recon_right_for_prev + right_big ;
recon_right_for_prev = recon_right_for ;

if ( full_pel_forward_vector ) recon_right_for = recon_right_for << 1 ;
new_vector = recon_down_for_prev + down_little ;
if ( (new_vector <= max) && (new_vector >= min) )
        recon_down_for = recon_down_for_prev + down_little ;
else
        recon_down_for = recon_down_for_prev + down_big ;
recon_down_for_prev = recon_down_for ;
if ( full_pel_forward_vector ) recon_down_for = recon_down_for << 1 ;
```

The motion vectors in whole pel units for the macroblock, right_for and down_for, and the half pel unit flags, right_half_for and down_half_for, are computed as follows:

for luminance	for chrominance
right_for = recon_right_for >> 1 ; down_for = recon_down_for >> 1 ; right _half_for = recon_right_for - (2*right_for) ; down_half_for = recon_down_for - (2*down_for) ;	right_for = (recon_right_for / 2) >> 1 ; down_for = (recon_down_for / 2) >> 1 ; right_half_for = recon_right_for/2 - (2*right_for) ; down_half_for = recon_down_for/2 - (2*down_for);

Motion vectors leading to references outside a reference picture's boundaries are not allowed.

A positive value of the reconstructed horizontal motion vector (right_for) indicates that the referenced area of the past reference picture is to the right of the macroblock in the coded picture.

A positive value of the reconstructed vertical motion vector (down_for) indicates that the referenced area of the past reference picture is below the macroblock in the coded picture.

Defining pel_past[][] as the pel values of the past picture referenced by the forward motion vector, and pel[][] as the predictors for the pel values of the block being decoded, then:

```
if ( (! right_half_for )&& (! down_half_for) )
        pel[i][j] = pel_past[i+down_for][j+right_for] ;
```

```
if ( (! right_half_for) &&  down_half_for )
        pel[i][j] = ( pel_past[i+down_for][j+right_for] +
                                        pel_past[i+down_for+1][j+right_for] ) // 2 ;

if (  right_half_for && (! down_half_for) )
        pel[i][j] = ( pel_past[i+down_for][j+right_for] +
                                        pel_past[i+down_for][j+right_for+1] ) // 2 ;

if (  right_half_for &&  down_half_for )
        pel[i][j] = ( pel_past[i+down_for][j+right_for] + pel_past[i+down_for+1][j+right_for] +
        pel_past[i+down_for][j+right_for+1] + pel_past[i+down_for+1][j+right_for+1] ) // 4 ;
```

Define non_intra_quant[m][n] to be the non-intra quantizer matrix that is specified in the sequence header.

The DCT coefficients for each block present in the macroblock shall be reconstructed by any means equivalent to the following procedure:

```
for ( m=0; m<8; m++ ) {
        for ( n=0; n<8; n++ ) {
                i = scan[m][n] ;
                dct_recon[m][n] = ( ( (2 * dct_zz[i]) + Sign(dct_zz[i]) ) *
                                        quantizer_scale * non_intra_quant[m][n] ) / 16 ;
                if ( ( dct_recon[m][n] & 1 ) == 0 )
                        dct_recon[m][n] = dct_recon[m][n] - Sign(dct_recon[m][n]) ;
                if (dct_recon[m][n] > 2047)  dct_recon[m][n] = 2047 ;
                if (dct_recon[m][n] < -2048)  dct_recon[m][n] = -2048 ;
                if ( dct_zz[i] == 0 )
                        dct_recon[m][n] = 0 ;
        }
}
```

dct_recon[m][n] = 0 for all m, n in skipped macroblocks and when pattern[i] == 0.

Once the DCT coefficients are reconstructed, the inverse DCT transform defined in annex A shall be applied to obtain the inverse transformed pel values in the interval [-256, 255]. The inverse DCT pel values shall be added to the pel[i][j] which were computed above using the motion vectors. The result of the addition shall be limited to the interval [0,255]. The location of the pels is determined from mb_row, mb_column and the pattern_code list.

2.4.4.3 Predictive-coded macroblocks in B-pictures

Predictive-coded macroblocks in B-Pictures are decoded in four steps.

First, the value of the forward motion vector for the macroblock is reconstructed from the retrieved forward motion vector information, and the forward motion vector reconstructed for the previous macroblock, using the same procedure as for calculating the forward motion vector in P-pictures. However, for B-pictures the previous reconstructed motion vectors shall be reset only for the first macroblock in a slice, or when the last macroblock that was decoded was an intra-coded macroblock. If no forward motion vector data exists for the current macroblock, the motion vectors shall be obtained by:

```
recon_right_for = recon_right_for_prev,
recon_down_for = recon_down_for_prev.
```

Second, the value of the backward motion vector for the macroblock shall be reconstructed from the retrieved backward motion vector information, and the backward motion vector reconstructed for the previous macroblock using the same procedure as for calculating the forward motion vector in B-pictures. In this procedure, the variables needed to find the backward motion vector are substituted for the variables needed to find the forward motion vector. The variables and coded data elements used to calculate the backward motion vector are:

```
recon_right_back_prev, recon_down_back_prev, backward_f_code, full_pel_backward_vector
        motion_horizontal_backward_code, motion_horizontal_backward_r,
          motion_vertical_backward_code, motion_vertical_backward_r,
```

backward_r_size and backward_f are derived from backward_f_code as follows:

```
backward_r_size = backward_f_code - 1
backward_f = 1 << backward_r_size
```

The following variables result from applying the algorithm in 2.4.4.2, modified as described in the previous paragraphs in this clause:

right_for	right_half_for	down_for	down_half_for
right_back	right_half_back	down_back	down_half_back

They define the integral and half pel value of the rightward and downward components of the forward motion vector (which references the past picture in display order) and the backward motion vector (which references the future picture in display order).

Third, the predictors of the pel values of the block being decoded, pel [][], are calculated. If only forward motion vector information was retrieved for the macroblock, then pel[][] of the decoded picture shall be calculated according to the formulas in 2.4.4.2. If only backward motion vector information was retrieved for the macroblock, then pel[][] of the decoded picture shall be calculated according to the formulas in the predictive-coded macroblock clause, with "back" replacing "for", and pel_future[][] replacing pel_past[][]. If both forward and backward motion vectors information are retrieved, then let pel_for[][] be the value calculated from the past picture by use of the reconstructed forward motion vector, and let pel_back[][] be the value calculated from the future picture by use of the reconstructed backward motion vector. Then the value of pel[][] shall be calculated by:

```
pel[][] = ( pel_for[][] + pel_back[][] ) // 2 ;
```

Define non_intra_quant[m][n] to be the non-intra quantizer matrix that is specified in the sequence header.

Fourth, the DCT coefficients for each block present in the macroblock shall be reconstructed by any means equivalent to the following procedure:

```
for ( m=0; m<8; m++ ) {
        for ( n=0; n<8; n++ ) {
                i = scan[m][n] ;
                dct_recon[m][n] = ( ( (2 * dct_zz[i]) + Sign(dct_zz[i]) ) *
                                quantizer_scale * non_intra_quant[m][n] ) / 16 ;
                if ( ( dct_recon[m][n] & 1 ) == 0 )
                        dct_recon[m][n] = dct_recon[m][n] - Sign(dct_recon[m][n]) ;
                if (dct_recon[m][n] > 2 047)  dct_recon[m][n] = 2 047 ;
                if (dct_recon[m][n] < -2 048)  dct_recon[m][n] = -2 048 ;
                if ( dct_zz[i] == 0 )
                        dct_recon[m][n] = 0 ;
        }
}
```

dct_recon[m][n] = 0 for all m, n in skipped macroblocks and when pattern[i] == 0.

Once the DCT coefficients are reconstructed, the inverse DCT transform defined in annex A shall be applied to obtain the inverse transformed pel values in the range [-256, 255]. The inverse DCT pel values shall be added to pel[][], which were computed above from the motion vectors. The result of the addition shall be limited to the interval [0,255]. The location of the pels is determined from mb_row, mb_column and the pattern_code list.

2.4.4.4 Skipped macroblocks

For some macroblocks there are no coded data, that is neither motion vector information nor DCT information is available to the decoder. These macroblocks are called skipped macroblocks and are indicated when the macroblock_address_increment is greater than 1.

In I-pictures, all macroblocks shall be coded and there shall be no skipped macroblocks.

In P-pictures, the skipped macroblock is defined to be a macroblock with a reconstructed motion vector equal to zero and no DCT coefficients.

In B-pictures, the skipped macroblock is defined to have the same macroblock_type (forward, backward, or both motion vectors) as the prior macroblock, differential motion vectors equal to zero, and no DCT coefficients. In a B-picture, a skipped macroblock shall not follow an intra-coded macroblock.

2.4.4.5 Forced updating

This function is achieved by forcing the use of an intra-coded macroblock. The update pattern is not defined. For control of accumulation of IDCT mismatch error, each macroblock shall be intra-coded at least once per every 132 times it is coded in a P-picture without an intervening I-picture.

Annex A

(normative)

8 by 8 Inverse discrete cosine transform

The 8 by 8 inverse discrete cosine transform for I-pictures and P-pictures shall conform to IEEE Draft Standard, P1180/D2, July 18, 1990. For B-pictures this specification may also be applied but may be unnecessarily stringent. Note that clause 2.3 of P1180/D2 "Considerations of Specifying IDCT Mismatch Errors" requires the specification of periodic intra-coding in order to control the accumulation of mismatch errors. The maximum refresh period requirement for this part of ISO/IEC 11172 shall be 132 intra-coded pictures or predictive-coded pictures as stated in 2.4.4.5, which is the same as indicated in P1180/D2 for visual telephony according to CCITT Recommendation H.261 [5].

Annex B

(normative)

Variable length code tables

Introduction

This annex contains the variable length code tables for macroblock addressing, macroblock type, macroblock pattern, motion vectors, and DCT coefficients.

B.1 Macroblock addressing

Table B.1. -- Variable length codes for macroblock_address_increment.

macroblock_address_ increment VLC code	increment value
1	1
011	2
010	3
0011	4
0010	5
0001 1	6
0001 0	7
0000 111	8
0000 110	9
0000 1011	10
0000 1010	11
0000 1001	12
0000 1000	13
0000 0111	14
0000 0110	15
0000 0101 11	16

macroblock_address_ increment VLC code	increment value
0000 0101 10	17
0000 0101 01	18
0000 0101 00	19
0000 0100 11	20
0000 0100 10	21
0000 0100 011	22
0000 0100 010	23
0000 0100 001	24
0000 0100 000	25
0000 0011 111	26
0000 0011 110	27
0000 0011 101	28
0000 0011 100	29
0000 0011 011	30
0000 0011 010	31
0000 0011 001	32
0000 0011 000	33
0000 0001 111	macroblock_stuffing
0000 0001 000	macroblock_escape

B.2 Macroblock type

The properties of the macroblock are determined by the macroblock type VLC according to these tables.

Table B.2a. -- Variable length codes for macroblock_type in intra-coded pictures (I-pictures).

macroblock_ typeVLC code	macroblock_ quant	macroblock_ motion_ forward	macroblock_ motion_ backward	macroblock_ pattern	macroblock_ intra
1	0	0	0	0	1
01	1	0	0	0	1

Table B.2b. -- Variable length codes for macroblock_type in predictive-coded pictures (P-pictures).

macroblock_ typeVLC code	macroblock_ quant	macroblock_ motion_ forward	macroblock_ motion_ backward	macroblock_ pattern	macroblock_ intra
1	0	1	0	1	0
01	0	0	0	1	0
001	0	1	0	0	0
00011	0	0	0	0	1
00010	1	1	0	1	0
00001	1	0	0	1	0
000001	1	0	0	0	1

Table B.2c. -- Variable length codes for macroblock_type in bidirectionally predictive-coded pictures (B-pictures).

macroblock_ typeVLC code	macroblock_ quant	macroblock_ motion_ forward	macroblock_ motion_ backward	macroblock_ pattern	macroblock_ intra
10	0	1	1	0	0
11	0	1	1	1	0
010	0	0	1	0	0
011	0	0	1	1	0
0010	0	1	0	0	0
0011	0	1	0	1	0
00011	0	0	0	0	1
00010	1	1	1	1	0
000011	1	1	0	1	0
000010	1	0	1	1	0
000001	1	0	0	0	1

Table B.2d. -- Variable length codes for macroblock_type in dc intra-coded pictures (D-pictures).

macroblock_ typeVLC code	macroblock_ quant	macroblock_ motion_ forward	macroblock_ motion_ backward	macroblock_ pattern	macroblock_ intra
1	0	0	0	0	1

B.3 Macroblock pattern

Table B.3. -- Variable length codes for coded_block_pattern.

coded_block_pattern VLC code	cbp
111	60
1101	4
1100	8
1011	16
1010	32
1001 1	12
1001 0	48
1000 1	20
1000 0	40
0111 1	28
0111 0	44
0110 1	52
0110 0	56
0101 1	1
0101 0	61
0100 1	2
0100 0	62
0011 11	24
0011 10	36
0011 01	3
0011 00	63
0010 111	5
0010 110	9
0010 101	17
0010 100	33
0010 011	6
0010 010	10
0010 001	18
0010 000	34
0001 1111	7
0001 1110	11
0001 1101	19

coded_block_pattern VLC code	cbp
0001 1100	35
0001 1011	13
0001 1010	49
0001 1001	21
0001 1000	41
0001 0111	14
0001 0110	50
0001 0101	22
0001 0100	42
0001 0011	15
0001 0010	51
0001 0001	23
0001 0000	43
0000 1111	25
0000 1110	37
0000 1101	26
0000 1100	38
0000 1011	29
0000 1010	45
0000 1001	53
0000 1000	57
0000 0111	30
0000 0110	46
0000 0101	54
0000 0100	58
0000 0011 1	31
0000 0011 0	47
0000 0010 1	55
0000 0010 0	59
0000 0001 1	27
0000 0001 0	39

B.4 Motion vectors

Table B.4. -- Variable length codes for motion_horizontal_forward_code, motion_vertical_forward_code, motion_horizontal_backward_code, and motion_vertical_backward_code.

motion VLC code	code
0000 0011 001	-16
0000 0011 011	-15
0000 0011 101	-14
0000 0011 111	-13
0000 0100 001	-12
0000 0100 011	-11
0000 0100 11	-10
0000 0101 01	-9
0000 0101 11	-8
0000 0111	-7
0000 1001	-6
0000 1011	-5
0000 111	-4
0001 1	-3
0011	-2
011	-1
1	0
010	1
0010	2
0001 0	3
0000 110	4
0000 1010	5
0000 1000	6
0000 0110	7
0000 0101 10	8
0000 0101 00	9
0000 0100 10	10
0000 0100 010	11
0000 0100 000	12
0000 0011 110	13
0000 0011 100	14
0000 0011 010	15
0000 0011 000	16

B.5 DCT coefficients

Table B.5a -- Variable length codes for dct_dc_size_luminance.

VLC code	dct_dc_size_luminance
100	0
00	1
01	2
101	3
110	4
1110	5
11110	6
111110	7
1111110	8

Table B.5b. -- Variable length codes for dct_dc_size_chrominance.

VLC code	dct_dc_size_chrominance
00	0
01	1
10	2
110	3
1110	4
11110	5
111110	6
1111110	7
11111110	8

Table B.5c. -- Variable length codes for dct_coeff_first and dct_coeff_next.

dct_coeff_first and dct_coeff_next variable length code (NOTE1)	run	level
10	end_of_block	
1 s (NOTE2)	0	1
11 s (NOTE3)	0	1
011 s	1	1
0100 s	0	2
0101 s	2	1
0010 1 s	0	3
0011 1 s	3	1
0011 0 s	4	1
0001 10 s	1	2
0001 11 s	5	1
0001 01 s	6	1
0001 00 s	7	1
0000 110 s	0	4
0000 100 s	2	2
0000 111 s	8	1
0000 101 s	9	1
0000 01	escape	
0010 0110 s	0	5
0010 0001 s	0	6
0010 0101 s	1	3
0010 0100 s	3	2
0010 0111 s	10	1
0010 0011 s	11	1
0010 0010 s	12	1
0010 0000 s	13	1
0000 0010 10 s	0	7
0000 0011 00 s	1	4
0000 0010 11 s	2	3
0000 0011 11 s	4	2
0000 0010 01 s	5	2
0000 0011 10 s	14	1
0000 0011 01 s	15	1
0000 0010 00 s	16	1

NOTES
1 - The last bit 's' denotes the sign of the level, '0' for positive '1' for negative.
2 - This code shall be used for dct_coeff_first.
3 - This code shall be used for dct_coeff_next.

Table B.5d. -- Variable length codes for dct_coeff_first and dct_coeff_next.

dct_coeff_first and dct_coeff_next variable length code (NOTE)	run	level
0000 0001 1101 s	0	8
0000 0001 1000 s	0	9
0000 0001 0011 s	0	10
0000 0001 0000 s	0	11
0000 0001 1011 s	1	5
0000 0001 0100 s	2	4
0000 0001 1100 s	3	3
0000 0001 0010 s	4	3
0000 0001 1110 s	6	2
0000 0001 0101 s	7	2
0000 0001 0001 s	8	2
0000 0001 1111 s	17	1
0000 0001 1010 s	18	1
0000 0001 1001 s	19	1
0000 0001 0111 s	20	1
0000 0001 0110 s	21	1
0000 0000 1101 0 s	0	12
0000 0000 1100 1 s	0	13
0000 0000 1100 0 s	0	14
0000 0000 1011 1 s	0	15
0000 0000 1011 0 s	1	6
0000 0000 1010 1 s	1	7
0000 0000 1010 0 s	2	5
0000 0000 1001 1 s	3	4
0000 0000 1001 0 s	5	3
0000 0000 1000 1 s	9	2
0000 0000 1000 0 s	10	2
0000 0000 1111 1 s	22	1
0000 0000 1111 0 s	23	1
0000 0000 1110 1 s	24	1
0000 0000 1110 0 s	25	1
0000 0000 1101 1 s	26	1

NOTE - The last bit 's' denotes the sign of the level, '0' for positive, '1' for negative.

Table B.5e. -- Variable length codes for dct_coeff_first and dct_coeff_next (concluded).

dct_coeff_first and dct_coeff_next variable length code (NOTE)	run	level
0000 0000 0111 11 s	0	16
0000 0000 0111 10 s	0	17
0000 0000 0111 01 s	0	18
0000 0000 0111 00 s	0	19
0000 0000 0110 11 s	0	20
0000 0000 0110 10 s	0	21
0000 0000 0110 01 s	0	22
0000 0000 0110 00 s	0	23
0000 0000 0101 11 s	0	24
0000 0000 0101 10 s	0	25
0000 0000 0101 01 s	0	26
0000 0000 0101 00 s	0	27
0000 0000 0100 11 s	0	28
0000 0000 0100 10 s	0	29
0000 0000 0100 01 s	0	30
0000 0000 0100 00 s	0	31
0000 0000 0011 000 s	0	32
0000 0000 0010 111 s	0	33
0000 0000 0010 110 s	0	34
0000 0000 0010 101 s	0	35
0000 0000 0010 100 s	0	36
0000 0000 0010 011 s	0	37
0000 0000 0010 010 s	0	38
0000 0000 0010 001 s	0	39
0000 0000 0010 000 s	0	40
0000 0000 0011 111 s	1	8
0000 0000 0011 110 s	1	9
0000 0000 0011 101 s	1	10
0000 0000 0011 100 s	1	11
0000 0000 0011 011 s	1	12
0000 0000 0011 010 s	1	13
0000 0000 0011 001 s	1	14
0000 0000 0001 0011 s	1	15
0000 0000 0001 0010 s	1	16
0000 0000 0001 0001 s	1	17
0000 0000 0001 0000 s	1	18
0000 0000 0001 0100 s	6	3
0000 0000 0001 1010 s	11	2
0000 0000 0001 1001 s	12	2
0000 0000 0001 1000 s	13	2
0000 0000 0001 0111 s	14	2
0000 0000 0001 0110 s	15	2
0000 0000 0001 0101 s	16	2
0000 0000 0001 1111 s	27	1
0000 0000 0001 1110 s	28	1
0000 0000 0001 1101 s	29	1
0000 0000 0001 1100 s	30	1
0000 0000 0001 1011 s	31	1

NOTE - The last bit 's' denotes the sign of the level, '0' for positive, '1' for negative.

Table B.5f. -- Encoding of run and level following an escape code either as a 14-bit fixed length code (-127 <= level <= 127) or as a 22-bit fixed length code (-255 <= level <= -128, 128 <= level <= 255).
(Note - This yields total escape code lengths of 20-bits and 28-bits respectively).

fixed length code	run
0000 00	0
0000 01	1
0000 10	2
...	...
...	...
...	...
...	...
...	...
...	...
1111 11	63

fixed length code	level
forbidden	-256
1000 0000 0000 0001	-255
1000 0000 0000 0010	-254
...	
1000 0000 0111 1111	-129
1000 0000 1000 0000	-128
1000 0001	-127
1000 0010	-126
...	...
1111 1110	-2
1111 1111	-1
forbidden	0
0000 0001	1
...	...
0111 1111	127
0000 0000 1000 0000	128
0000 0000 1000 0001	129
...	
0000 0000 1111 1111	255

Annex C

(normative)

Video buffering verifier

Constant rate coded video bitstreams shall meet constraints imposed through a Video Buffering Verifier (VBV) defined in clause C.1.

The VBV is a hypothetical decoder which is conceptually connected to the output of an encoder. Coded data are placed in the input buffer of the model decoder at the constant bitrate that is being used. Coded data is removed from the buffer as defined in C.1.4, below. It is a requirement of the encoder (or editor) that the bitstream it produces will not cause the VBV input buffer to either overflow or underflow.

C.1 Video buffering verifier

C.1.1 The VBV and the video encoder have the same clock frequency as well as the same picture rate, and are operated synchronously.

C.1.2 The VBV has an input buffer of size B, where B is given in the vbv_buffer_size field in the sequence header.

C.1.3 The VBV input buffer is initially empty. After filling the input buffer with all the data that precedes the first picture start code and the picture start code itself, the input buffer is filled from the bitstream for the time specified by the vbv_delay field in the video bitstream.

C.1.4 All of the picture data for the picture that has been in the buffer longest is instantaneously removed. Then after each subsequent picture interval all of the picture data for the picture which at that time has been in the buffer longest is instantaneously removed.

> For the purposes of this annex picture data includes any sequence header and group of picture layer data that immediately precede the picture start code as well as all the picture data elements and any trailing stuffing bits or bytes. For the first coded picture in the video sequence, any zero bit or byte stuffing immediately preceding the sequence header is also included in the picture data.

The VBV buffer is examined immediately before removing any picture data and immediately after this picture data is removed. Each time the VBV is examined its occupancy shall lie between zero bits and B bits where, B is the size of the VBV buffer indicated by vbv_buffer_size in the sequence header.

This is a requirement for the entire video bitstream.

To meet these requirements the number of bits for the (n+1)'th coded picture d_{n+1} shall satisfy

$$d_{n+1} > B_n + (2R/P) - B$$

$$d_{n+1} <= B_n + (R/P)$$

Real-valued arithmetic is used in these inequalities.

where

$n >= 0$

B = VBV receiving buffer size given by **vbv_buffer_size** * 16 384 bits.

B_n = the buffer occupancy (measured in bits) just after time t_n

R = bitrate measured in bits/s. The full precision of the bitrate rather than the rounded value encoded by the **bit_rate** field in the sequence header shall be used by the encoder in the VBV model.

P = nominal number of pictures per second

t_n = the time when the n'th coded picture is removed from the VBV buffer

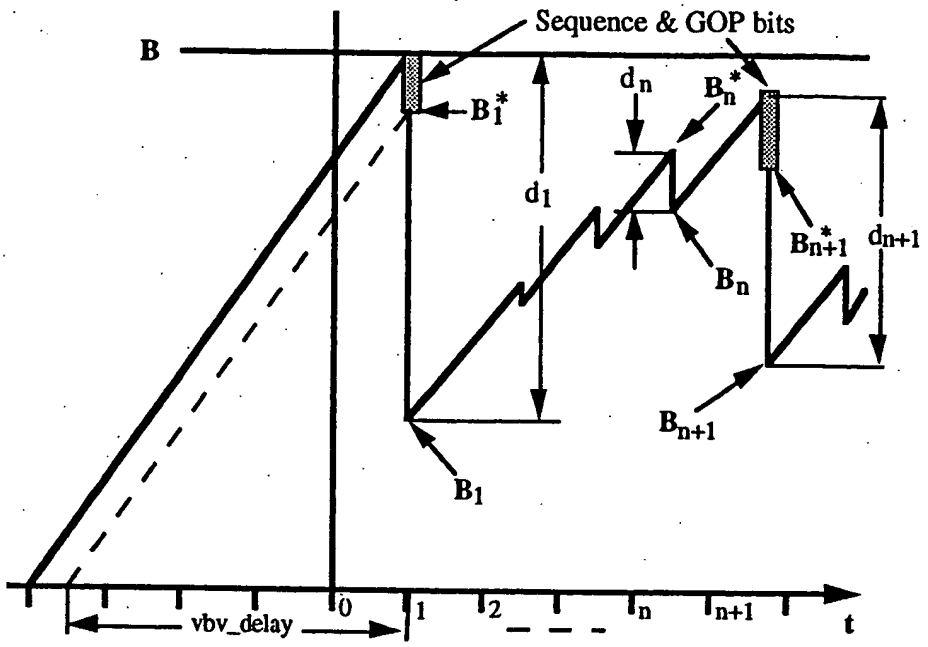


Figure C.1 -- VBV buffer occupancy

Annex D

(informative)

Guide to encoding video

D.1 Introduction

This annex provides background material to help readers understand and implement this part of ISO/IEC 11172. The normative clauses of this part of ISO/IEC 11172 do not specify the design of a decoder. They provide even less information about encoders; they do not specify what algorithms encoders should employ in order to produce a valid bitstream. The normative material is written in a concise form and contains few examples; consequently is not easy to understand. This annex attempts to address this problem by explaining coding methods, giving examples, and discussing encoding and decoding algorithms which are not directly covered by this part of ISO/IEC 11172.

The normative clauses specify the bitstream in such a way that it is fairly straightforward to design a compliant decoder. Decoders may differ considerably in architecture and implementation details, but have very few choices during the decoding process: the methods and the results of the decoding process are closely specified. Decoders do have some freedom in methods of post processing and display, but the results of such post processing cannot be used in subsequent decoding steps.

The situation is quite different for encoders. This part of ISO/IEC 11172 does not specify how to design or implement an encoder which produces good quality video. This annex devotes a major part to discussing encoder algorithms.

This part of ISO/IEC 11172 was developed by ISO/IEC JTC1/SC29/WG11 which is widely known as MPEG (Moving Pictures Expert Group). This part of ISO/IEC 11172 was developed in response to industry needs for an efficient way of storing and retrieving audio and video information on digital storage media (DSM). CD-ROM is an inexpensive medium which can deliver data at approximately 1,2 Mbits/s, and this part of ISO/IEC 11172 was aimed at approximately this data rate. The "constrained parameters bitstream", a subset of all permissible bitstreams that is expected to be widely used, is limited to data rates up to 1 856 000 bits/s. However, it should be noted that this part of ISO/IEC 11172 is not limited to this value and may be used at higher data rates.

Two other relevant International Standards were being developed during the work of the MPEG video committee: H.261 by CCITT aimed at telecommunications applications [5], and ISO/IEC 10918 by the ISO/IEC JTC1/SC29 (JPEG) committee aimed at the coding of still pictures [6]. Elements of both of these standards were incorporated into this part of ISO/IEC 11172, but subsequent development work by the committee resulted in coding elements that are new to this part of ISO/IEC 11172. Le Gall [2] gives an account of the method by which ISO/IEC JTC1/SC29/WG11 (MPEG) developed this part of ISO/IEC 11172, and a summary of this part of ISO/IEC 11172 itself.

D.2 Overview

D.2.1 Video concepts

This part of ISO/IEC 11172 defines a format for compressed digital video. This annex describes some ways in which practical encoders and decoders might be implemented.

Although this part of ISO/IEC 11172 is quite flexible, the basic algorithms have been tuned to work well at data rates of about 1 to 1,5 M bits/s, at spatial resolutions of about 350 pels horizontally by about 250 pels vertically, and picture rates of about 24 to 30 pictures/s. The use of the word "picture" as opposed to "frame" is deliberate. This part of ISO/IEC 11172 codes progressively-scanned images and does not recognize the concept of interlace. Interlaced source video must be converted to a non-interlaced format before coding. After decoding, the decoder may optionally produce an interlaced format for display.

This part of ISO/IEC 11172 is designed to permit several methods of viewing coded video which are normally associated with VCRs such as forward playback, freeze picture, fast forward, fast reverse, and slow

forward. In addition, random access may be possible. The ability of the decoder to implement these modes depends to some extent on the nature of the digital storage medium on which the coded video is stored.

The overall process of encoding and decoding is illustrated below:

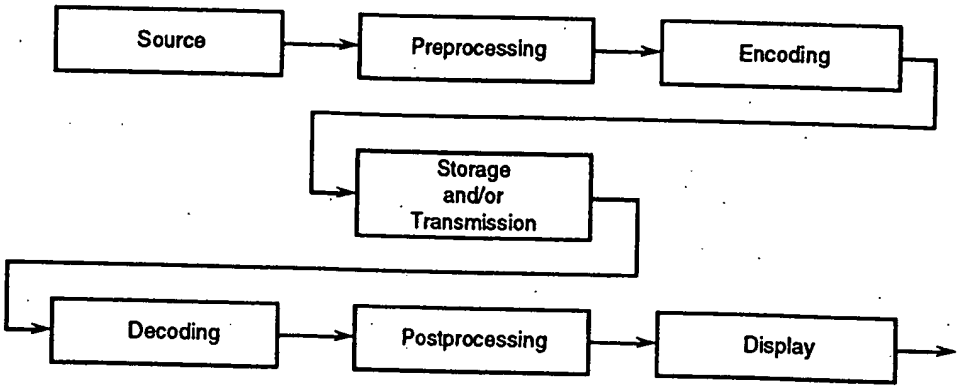


Figure D.1 -- Coding and decoding process

Figure D.1 shows a typical sequence of operations that must be performed before moving pictures can be seen by a viewer. The unencoded source may exist in many forms, such as the CCIR 601 format. Clause D.3 describes how such a source may be converted into the appropriate resolution for subsequent encoding. In the encoding step, the encoder must be aware of the decoder buffer capacity, and the need of the decoder to match the rate of the media to the rate of filling the picture buffer with each successive picture. To this end, a model of the decoder buffer and its overflow and underflow problem is introduced in D.4, and rate control is described in D.6.1 The structure of an ISO/IEC 11172-2 bitstream is covered in D.5, as are the coding operations that compress the video. Following the encoding process, the bitstream may be copied to a storage medium. To view the moving pictures, the decoder accesses the ISO/IEC 11172-2 bitstream, and decodes it as described in D.7. Postprocessing for display is described in D.8.

D.2.2 MPEG video compression techniques

Video is represented as a succession of individual pictures, and each picture is treated as a two-dimensional array of picture elements (pels). The colour representation for each pel consists of three components: Y (luminance), and two chrominance components, Cb and Cr.

Compression of digitized video comes from the use of several techniques: subsampling of the chrominance information to match the sensitivity of the human visual system (HVS), quantization, motion compensation (MC) to exploit temporal redundancy, frequency transformation by discrete cosine transform (DCT) to exploit spatial redundancy, variable length coding (VLC), and picture interpolation.

D.2.2.1 Subsampling of chrominance information

The HVS is most sensitive to the resolution of an image's luminance component, so the Y pel values are encoded at full resolution. The HVS is less sensitive to the chrominance information. Subsampling reduces the number of pel values by systematically combining them with a type of averaging process. This reduces the amount of information to be compressed by other techniques.The International Standard retains one set of chrominance pels for each 2x2 neighbourhood of luminance pels.

D.2.2.2 Quantization

Quantization represents a range of values by a single value in the range. For example, converting a real number to the nearest integer is a form of quantization. The quantized range can be concisely represented as an integer code, which can be used to recover the quantized value during decoding. The difference between the actual value and the quantized value is called the quantization noise. Under some circumstances, the HVS is less sensitive to quantization noise so such noise can be allowed to be large, thus increasing coding efficiency.

D.2.2.3 Predictive coding

Predictive coding is a technique to improve the compression through statistical redundancy. Based on values of pels previously decoded, both the encoder and decoder can estimate or predict the value of a pel yet to be encoded or decoded. The difference between the predicted and actual values is encoded. This difference value is the prediction error which the decoder can use to correct the prediction. Most error values will be small and cluster around the value 0 since pel values typically do not have large changes within a small spatial neighbourhood. The probability distribution of the prediction error is skewed and compresses better than the distribution of the pel values themselves. Additional information can be discarded by quantizing the prediction error. In this International Standard predictive coding is also used for the dc-values of successive luminance or chrominance blocks and in the encoding of motion vectors.

D.2.2.4 Motion compensation and interframe coding

Motion compensation (MC) predicts the values of a block pels in a picture by relocating a block of neighbouring pel values from a known picture. The motion is described as a two-dimensional motion vector that specifies where to retrieve a block of pel values from a previously decoded picture that is used to predict pel values of the current block. The simplest example is a scene where the camera is not moving, and no objects in the scene are moving. The pel values at each image location remain the same, and the motion vector for each block is 0. In general however, the encoder may transmit a motion vector for each macroblock. The translated block from the known picture becomes a prediction for the block in the picture to be encoded. The technique relies on the fact that within a short sequence of pictures of the same general scene, many objects remain in the same location while others move only a short distance.

D.2.2.5 Frequency transformation

The discrete cosine transform (DCT) converts an 8 by 8 block of pel values to an 8 by 8 matrix of horizontal and vertical spatial frequency coefficients. An 8 by 8 block of pel values can be reconstructed by performing the inverse discrete cosine transform (IDCT) on the spatial frequency coefficients. In general, most of the energy is concentrated in the low frequency coefficients, which are conventionally written in the upper left corner of the transformed matrix. Compression is achieved by a quantization step, where the quantization intervals are identified by an index. Since the encoder identifies the interval and not the exact value within the interval, the pel values of the block reconstructed by the IDCT have reduced accuracy.

The DCT coefficient in location (0,0) (upper left) of the block represents the zero horizontal and zero vertical frequency and is called the dc coefficient. The dc coefficient is proportional to the average pel value of the 8 by 8 block, and additional compression is provided through predictive coding since the difference in the average value of neighbouring 8 by 8 blocks tends to be relatively small. The other coefficients represent one or more nonzero horizontal or nonzero vertical spatial frequencies, and are called ac coefficients. The quantization level of the coefficients corresponding to the higher spatial frequencies favors the creation of an ac coefficient of 0 by choosing a quantization step size such that the HVS is unlikely to perceive the loss of the particular spatial frequency unless the coefficient value lies above the particular quantization level. The statistical encoding of the expected runs of consecutive zero-valued coefficients of higher-order coefficients accounts for considerable compression gain. To cluster nonzero coefficients early in the series and encode as many zero coefficients as possible following the last nonzero coefficient in the ordering, the coefficient sequence is specified to be a zig-zag ordering; see figure D.30. The ordering concentrates the highest spatial frequencies at the end of the series.

D.2.2.6 Variable-length coding

Variable-length coding (VLC) is a statistical coding technique that assigns codewords to values to be encoded. Values of high frequency of occurrence are assigned short codewords, and those of infrequent occurrence are assigned long codewords. On average, the more frequent shorter codewords dominate, such that the code string is shorter than the original data.

D.2.2.7 Picture interpolation

If the decoder reconstructs a picture from the past and a picture from the future, then the intermediate pictures can be reconstructed by the technique of interpolation, or bidirectional prediction. Blocks in the intermediate pictures can be forward and backward predicted and translated by means of motion vectors. The decoder may reconstruct pel values belonging to a given block as an average of values from the past and future pictures.

D.2.3 Bitstream hierarchy

The ISO/IEC 11172-2 coding scheme is arranged in layers corresponding to a hierarchical structure. A **sequence** is the top layer of the coding hierarchy and consists of a header and some number of **groups-of-pictures** (GOPs). The sequence header initializes the state of the decoder. This allows decoders to decode any sequence without being affected by past decoding history.

A **GOP** is a random access point, i.e. it is the smallest coding unit that can be independently decoded within a sequence, and consists of a header and some number of **pictures**. The GOP header contains time and editing information.

A **picture** corresponds to a single frame of motion video, or to a movie frame. There are four picture types: **I-pictures**, or *intra coded pictures*, which are coded without reference to any other pictures; **P-pictures**, or *predictive coded pictures*, which are coded using motion compensation from a previous I or P-picture; **B-pictures**, or *bidirectionally* predictive coded pictures, which are coded using motion compensation from a previous and a future I or P-picture, and D pictures, or *D* pictures, which are intended only for a fast forward search mode. A typical coding scheme contains a mix of I, P, and B-pictures. Typically, an I-picture may occur every half a second, to give reasonably fast random access, with two B-pictures inserted between each pair of I or P-pictures.

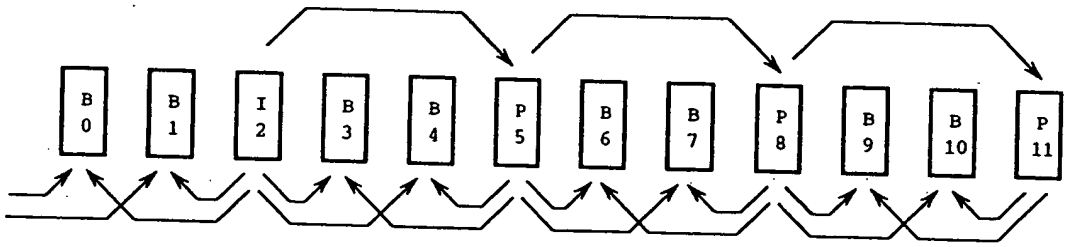


Figure D.2 -- Dependency relationship between I, B, and P-pictures

Figure D.2 illustrates a number of pictures in display order. The arrows show the dependency relationship of the predictive and bidirectionally predictive coded pictures.

Note that because of the picture dependencies, the bitstream order, i.e. the order in which pictures are transmitted, stored, or retrieved, is not the display order, but rather the order which the decoder requires them to decode the bitstream. An example of a sequence of pictures, in display order, might be:

I	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B	I	B	B	P	B	B	P
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18

Figure D.3 -- Typical sequence of pictures in display order

whereas the bitstream order would be as shown below:

I	P	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B	I	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B
0	3	1	2	6	4	5	9	7	8	12	10	11	15	13	14	18	16	17

Figure D.4 -- Typical sequence of pictures in bitstream order

Because the B-pictures depend on the following (in display order) I or P-picture, the I or P-picture must be transmitted and decoded before the dependent B-pictures.

Pictures consist of a header and one or more slices. The picture header contains time, picture type, and coding information.

A **slice** provides some immunity to data corruption. Should the bitstream become unreadable within a picture, the decoder should be able to recover by waiting for the next slice, without having to drop an entire picture.

Slices consist of a header and one or more **macroblocks**. At the start of each slice all of the predictors, for dc values and motion vectors, are reset. The slice header contains position and quantizer scale information. This is sufficient for recovery from local corruption.

A **macroblock** is the basic unit for motion compensation and quantizer scale changes.

Each **macroblock** consists of a header and six component 8 by 8 **blocks**: four blocks of luminance, one block of Cb chrominance, and one block of Cr chrominance. See figure D.5. The macroblock header contains quantizer scale and motion compensation information.

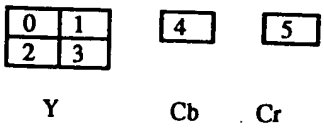


Figure D.5 -- Macroblock structure

A **macroblock** contains a 16-pel by 16-line section of luminance component and the spatially corresponding 8-pel by 8-line section of each chrominance component. A skipped macroblock is one for which no information is stored (see 2.4.4.4).

Note that the picture area covered by the four blocks of luminance is the same as the area covered by each of the chrominance blocks. This is due to subsampling of the chrominance information.

Blocks are the basic coding unit, and the DCT is applied at this block level. Each block contains 64 component pels arranged in an 8 by 8 array as shown in figure D.6.

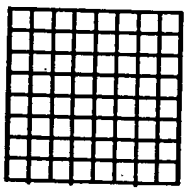


Figure D.6 -- Block structure

D.2.4 Decoder overview

A simplified block diagram of a possible decoder implementation is shown below:

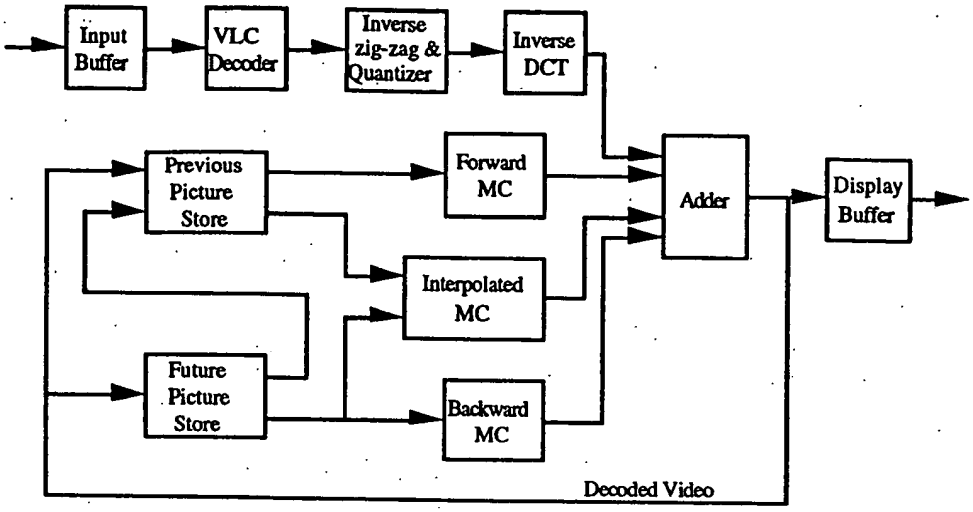


Figure D.7 -- Simplified decoder block diagram

It is instructive to follow the method which the decoder uses to decode a bitstream containing the sequence of pictures given in Fig D.4, and display them in the order given in Fig D.3. The following description is simplified for clarity.

The input bitstream is accumulated in the Input Buffer until needed. The Variable Length Code (VLC) Decoder decodes the header of the first picture, picture 0, and determines that it is an I-picture. The VLC Decoder produces quantized coefficients corresponding to the quantized DCT coefficients. These are assembled for each 8 by 8 block of pels in the image by inverse zig-zag scanning. The Inverse Quantizer produces the actual DCT coefficients using the quantization step size. The coefficients are then transformed into pel values by the Inverse DCT transformer and stored in the Previous Picture Store and the Display Buffer. The picture may be displayed at the appropriate time.

The VLC Decoder decodes the header of the next picture, picture 3, and determines that it is a P-picture. For each block, the VLC Decoder decodes motion vectors giving the displacement from the stored previous picture, and quantized coefficients corresponding to the quantized DCT coefficients of the difference block. These quantized coefficients are inverse quantized to produce the actual DCT coefficients. The coefficients are then transformed into pel difference values and added to the predicted block produced by applying the motion vectors to blocks in the stored previous picture. The resultant block is stored in the Future Picture Store and the Display Buffer. This picture cannot be displayed until B-pictures 1 and 2 have been received, decoded, and displayed.

The VLC Decoder decodes the header of the next picture, picture 1, and determines that it is a B-picture. For each block, the VLC decoder decodes motion vectors giving the displacement from the stored previous or future pictures or both, and quantized coefficients corresponding to the quantized DCT coefficients of the difference block. These quantized coefficients are inverse quantized to produce the actual DCT coefficients. The coefficients are then inverse transformed into difference pel values and added to the predicted block produced by applying the motion vectors to the stored pictures. The resultant block is then stored in the Display Buffer. It may be displayed at the appropriate time.

The VLC Decoder decodes the header of the next picture, picture 2, and determines that it is a B-picture. It is decoded using the same method as for picture 1. After decoding picture 2, picture 0, which is in the Previous Picture Store, is no longer needed and may be discarded.

The VLC Decoder decodes the header of the next picture, picture 6, and determines that it is a P-picture. The picture in the Future Picture Store is copied into the Previous Picture Store, then decoding proceeds as for picture 3. Picture 6 should not be displayed until pictures 4 and 5 have been received and displayed.

The VLC Decoder decodes the header of the next picture, picture 4, and determines that it is a B-picture. It is decoded using the same method as for picture 1.

The VLC Decoder decodes the header of the next picture, picture 5, and determines that it is a B-picture. It is decoded using the same method as for picture 1.

The VLC Decoder decodes the header of the next picture, picture 9, and determines that it is a P-picture. It then proceeds as for picture 6.

The VLC Decoder decodes the header of the next picture, picture 7, and determines that it is a B-picture. It is decoded using the same method as for picture 1.

The VLC Decoder decodes the header of the next picture, picture 8, and determines that it is a B-picture. It is decoded using the same method as for picture 1.

The VLC Decoder decodes the header of the next picture, picture 12, and determines that it is an I-picture. It is decoded using the same method as for picture 0. This process is repeated for the subsequent pictures.

D.3 Preprocessing

The source material may exist in many forms, e.g. computer files or CCIR 601 format, but in general, it must be processed before being encoded. This clause discusses some aspects of preprocessing.

For a given data rate and source material, there is an optimum picture rate and spatial resolution at which to code if the best perceived quality is desired. If the resolution is too high, then too many bits will be expended on the overhead associated with each block leaving too few to code the values of each pel accurately. If the resolution is too low, the pel values will be rendered accurately, but high frequency detail will be lost. The optimum resolution represents a tradeoff between the various coding artifacts (e.g. noise and blockiness) and the perceived resolution and sharpness of the image. This tradeoff is further complicated by the unknowns of the final viewing conditions, e.g. screen brightness and the distance of the viewer from the screen.

At data rates of 1 to 1,5 Mbits/s, reasonable choices are: picture rates of 24, 25 and 30 pictures/s, a horizontal resolution of between 250 and 400 pels, and a vertical resolution of between 200 and 300 lines. Note that these values are not normative and other picture rates and resolutions are valid.

D.3.1 Conversion from CCIR 601 video to MPEG SIF

The two widely used scanning standards for colour television are 525 and 625 lines at 29,97 and 25 frames/s respectively. The number of lines containing picture information in the transmitted signal is 484 for the 525-line system and 576 for the 625-line system. Both use interlaced scanning with two fields per picture.

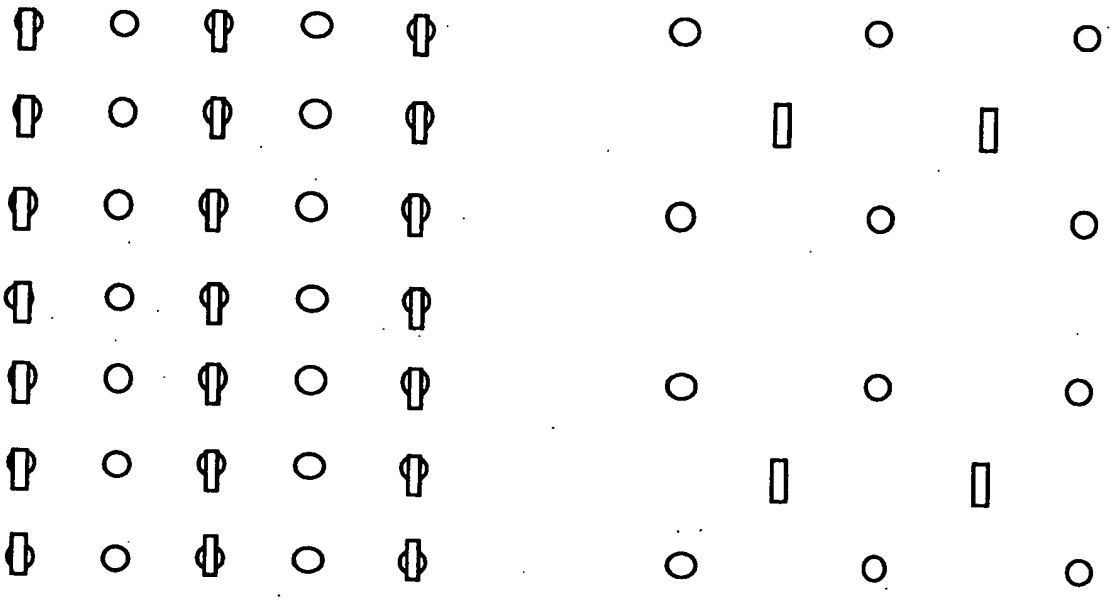
CCIR Recommendation 601 defines standards for the digital coding of colour television signals in component form. Of these the 4:2:2 standard has become widely adopted; the sampling frequency used for the luminance signal, Y, is 13,5 MHz and the two colour difference signals, Cb or B-Y and Cr or R-Y, are both sampled at 6,75 MHz. The number of luminance samples in the digital active line is 720 but only about 702 will be used in practice by the analogue active line.

The number of picture elements in the height and width of the picture, in the standards defined above, are too large for effective coding at data rates between 1 and 1,5 Mbit/s. More appropriate values are obtained by decreasing the resolution in both directions to a half. This reduces the pel rate by a factor of four. Interlace should be avoided as it increases the difficulties in achieving low data rates.

One way to reduce the vertical resolution is to use only the odd or the even fields. If the other field is simply discarded, spatial aliasing will be introduced, and this may produce visible and objectionable artifacts. More sophisticated methods of rate conversion require more computational power, but can perceptibly reduce the aliasing artifacts.

The horizontal and vertical resolutions may be halved by filtering and subsampling. Consider a picture in the 4:2:2 format. See the CCIR 601 sampling pattern of figure D.8(a). Such a sampling pattern may be converted to the SIF sampling pattern of figure D.8(b) as follows. The odd field only may be extracted, reducing the number of lines by two, and then a horizontal decimation filter used on the remaining lines to

reduce the horizontal resolution by a factor of two. In addition the chrominance values may be vertically decimated. The filters for luminance and chrominance have to be chosen carefully since particular attention has to be given to the location of the samples in the respective International Standards. The temporal relationship between luminance and chrominance must also be correct.



(a) Sampling pattern for 4:2:2 (CCIR 601) (b) Sampling pattern for MPEG (SIF)
Circles represent luminance; Boxes represent Chrominance

Figure D.8 -- Conversion of CCIR 601 to SIF

The following 7-tap FIR filter has been found to give good results in decimating the luminance:

-29	0	88	138	88	0	-29

// 256

Figure D.9 -- Luminance subsampling filter tap weights

Use of a power of two for the divisor allows a simple hardware implementation.

The chrominance samples have to appear in the between the luminance samples both horizontally and vertically. The following linear filter with a phase shift of half a pel may be found useful.

1	3	3	1

// 8

Figure D.10 -- Chrominance subsampling filter tap weights

To recover the samples consistent with the CCIR 601 grid of figure D.8(a), the process of interpolation is used. The interpolation filter applied to a zero-padded signal can be chosen to be equal to the decimation filter employed for the luminance and the two chrominance values in the encoder.

Note that these filters are not part of the International Standard, and other filters may be used.

At the end of the lines some special technique such as renormalizing the filter or replicating the last pel, must be adopted. The following example shows a horizontal line of 16 luminance pels and the same line after filtering and subsampling. In this example the data in the line is reflected at each end.

```
10   12   20   30   35   15   19   11   11   19   26   45   80   90   92   90
  12        32        23         9        12        49        95        92
```

Figure D.11 -- Example of filtering and subsampling of a line of pels

The result of this filtering and subsampling is a source input format (SIF) which has a luminance resolution of 360 x 240 or 360 x 288, and a chrominance resolution which is half that of the luminance in each dimension.

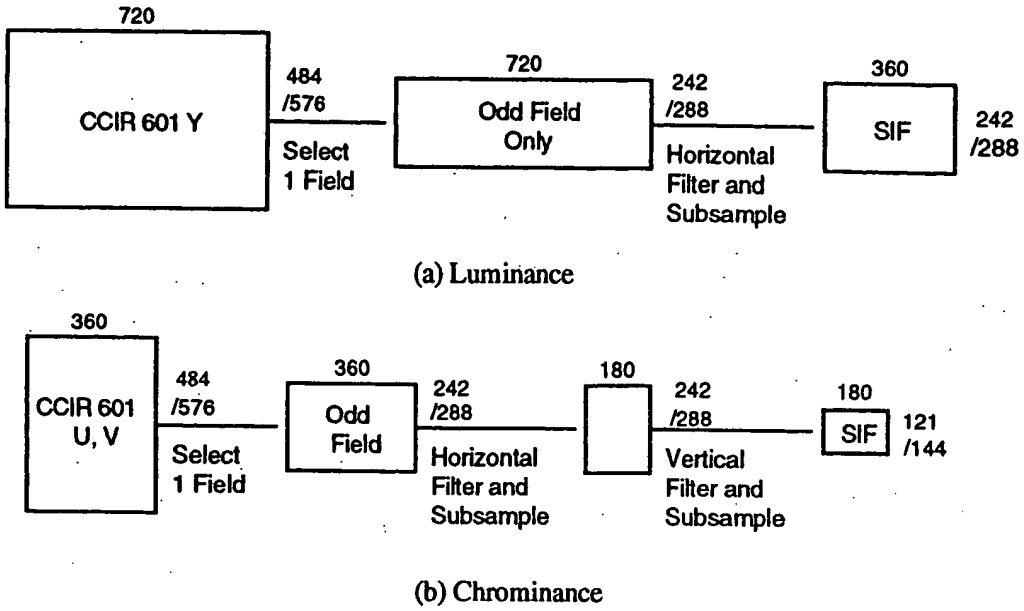


Figure D.12 -- Conversion from CCIR 601 into SIF

The SIF is not quite optimum for processing by MPEG video coders. MPEG video divides the luminance component into macroblocks of 16x16 pels. The horizontal resolution, 360, is not divisible by 16. The same is true of the vertical resolution, 242, in the case of 525-line systems. A better match is obtained in the horizontal direction by discarding the 4 pels at the end of every line of the subsampled picture. Care must be taken that this results in the correct configuration of luminance and chrominance samples in the macroblock. The remaining picture is called the significant pel area, and corresponds to the dark area in figure D.13:

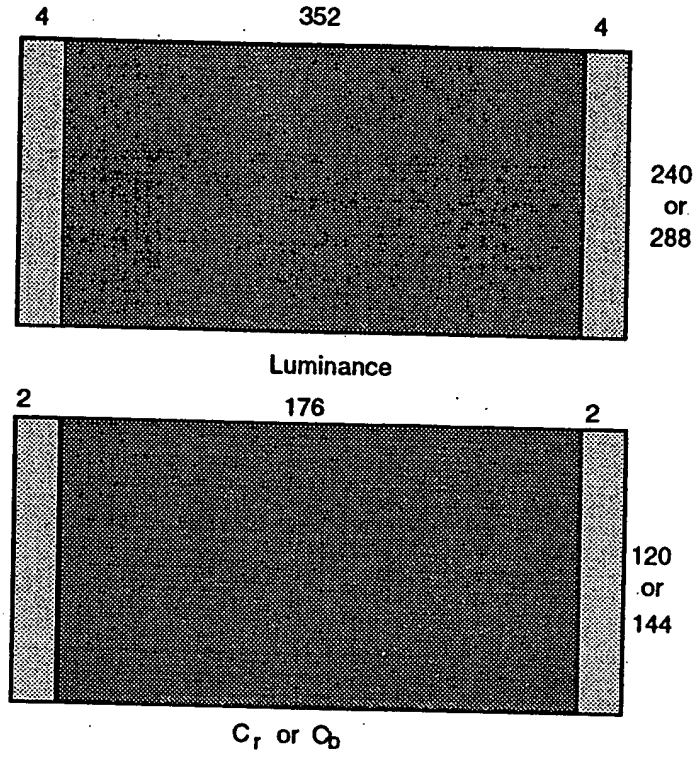


Figure D.13 -- Source input with significant pel area shaded dark

The conversion process is summarized in table D.1.

Table D.1 -- Conversion of source formats

Picture Rate (Hz)	29,97	25
Picture Aspect Ratio (width:height)	4:3	4:3
Luminance (Y)		
CCIR Sample Resolution	720 x 484	720 x 576
SIF	360 x 242	360 x 288
Significant Pel Area	352 x 240	352 x 288
Chrominance (Cb Cr)		
CCIR Sample Resolution	360 x 484	360 x 576
SIF	180 x 121	180 x 144
Significant Pel Area	176 x 120	176 x 144

The preprocessing into the SIF format is not normative, other processing steps and other resolutions may be used. The picture size need not even be a multiple of 16. In this case an MPEG video coder adds padding pels to the right or bottom edges of a picture in order to bring the transmitted resolution up to a multiple of 16, and the decoder discards these after decoding the picture. For example, a horizontal resolution of 360 pels could be coded by adding 8 padding pels to the right edge of each horizontal row bringing the total up to 368 pels. 23 macroblocks would be coded in each row. The decoder would discard the extra padding pels after decoding, giving a final decoded horizontal resolution of 360 pels.

D.3.2 Conversion from film

If film material can be digitized at 24 pictures/s, then it forms an excellent source for an ISO/IEC 11172-2 bitstream. It may be digitized at the desired spatial resolution. The picture_rate field in the video sequence header, see 2.4.2.3, allows the picture rate of 24 pictures/s to be specified exactly.

Sometimes the source material available for compression consists of film material which has been converted to video at some other rate. The encoder may detect this and recode at the original film rate. For example, 24 pictures/s film material may have been digitized and converted to a 30 frame/s system by the technique of 3:2 pulldown. In this mode digitized pictures are shown alternately for 3 and for 2 television field times. This alternation may not be exact since the actual frame rate might be 29,97 frames/s and not the 30 frames/s that the 3:2 pulldown technique gives. In addition the pulldown timing might have been changed by editing and splicing after the conversion. A sophisticated encoder might detect the duplicated fields, average them to reduce digitization noise, and code the result at the original 24 pictures/s rate. This should give a significant improvement in quality over coding at 30 pictures per second, since direct coding at 30 pictures/s destroys the 3:2 pulldown timing and gives a jerky appearance to the final decoded video.

D.4 Model decoder

D.4.1 Need for a decoder model

A coded bitstream contains different types of pictures, and each type ideally requires a different number of bits to encode. In addition, the video may vary in complexity with time, and an encoder may wish to devote more coding bits to one part of a sequence than to another. For constant bitrate coding, varying the number of bits allocated to each picture requires that the decoder have buffering to store the bits not needed to decode the immediate picture. The extent to which an encoder can vary the number of bits allocated to each picture depends on the amount of this buffering. If the amount of the buffering is large an encoder can use greater variations, increasing the picture quality, but at the cost of increasing the decoding delay. Encoders need to know the size of the amount of the decoder's buffering in order to determine to what extent they can vary the distribution of coding bits among the pictures in the sequence.

The model decoder is defined to solve two problems. It constrains the variability in the number of bits that may be allocated to different pictures and it allows a decoder to initialize its buffering when the system is started. It should be noted that Part 1 of this International Standard addresses the initialisation of buffers and the maintenance of synchronisation during playback in the case when two or more elementary streams (for example one audio and one video stream) are multiplexed together. The tools defined in ISO/IEC 11172-1 for the maintenance of synchronisation should be used by decoders when multiplexed streams are being played.

D.4.2 Decoder model

Annex C contains the definition of a parameterized model decoder for this purpose. It is known as a Video Buffer Verifier (VBV). The parameters used by a particular encoder are defined in the bitstream. This really defines a model decoder that is needed if encoders are to be assured that the coded bitstreams they produce will be decodable. The model decoder looks like this:

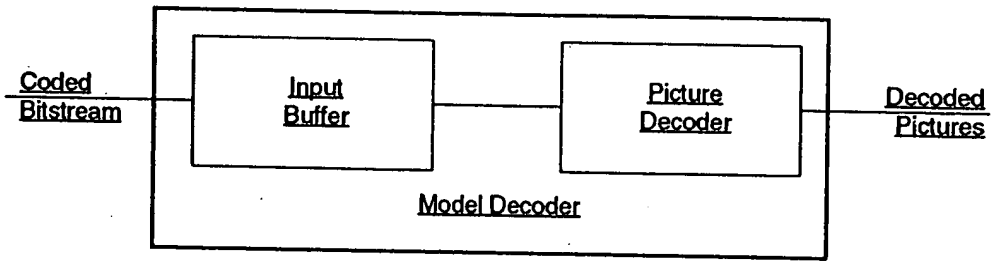


Figure D.14 -- Model decoder

A fixed-rate channel is assumed to put bits at a constant rate into the Input Buffer. At regular intervals, set by the picture rate, the Picture Decoder instantaneously removes all the bits for the next picture from the Input Buffer. If there are too few bits in the Input Buffer, i.e. all the bits for the next picture have not been received, then the Input Buffer underflows and there is an underflow error. If, during the time between picture starts, the capacity of the Input Buffer is exceeded, then there is an overflow error.

Practical decoders differ from this model in several important ways. They may implement their buffering at a different point in the decoder, or distribute it throughout the decoder. They may not remove all the bits required to decode a picture from the Input Buffer instantaneously, they may not be able to control the start

of decoding very precisely as required by the buffer fullness parameter in the picture header, and they take a finite time to decode. They may also be able to delay decoding for a short time to reduce the chances of underflow occuring. But these differences depend in degree and kind on the exact method of implementation. To satisfy requirements of different implementations, the MPEG video committee (ISO/IEC JTC1 SC29/WG11) chose a very simple model for the decoder. Practical implementations of decoders must ensure that they can decode the bitstream constrained by this model. In many cases this will be achieved by using an Input Buffer that is larger than the minimum required, and by using a decoding delay that is larger than the value derived from the vbv_delay parameter. The designer must compensate for differences between the actual design and the model in order to guarantee that the decoder can handle any bitstream that satisfies the model.

Encoders monitor the status of the model to control the encoder so that overflow problems do not occur. The calculated buffer fullness is transmitted at the start of each picture so that the decoder can maintain synchronization.

D.4.3 Buffer size and delay

For constant bit rate operation each picture header contains a vbv_delay parameter to enable decoders to start their decoding correctly. This parameter defines the time needed to fill the Input Buffer of figure D.14 from an empty state to the correct level immediately before the Picture Decoder removes all the bits for the picture. This time is thus a delay and is measured in units of 1/90 000 s. This number was chosen because it is almost an exact multiple of the picture durations: 1/24, 1/25, 1/29,97 and 1/30, and because it is comparable in duration to an audio sample.

The delay is given by

$$D = \text{vbv\_delay} / 90\,000 \text{ s}$$

For example, if vbv_delay were 9 000, then the delay would be 0,1 sec. This means that at the start of a picture the Input Buffer of the model decoder should contain exactly 0,1 s worth of data from the input bitstream.

The bit rate, R, is defined in the sequence header. The number of bits in the Input Buffer at the beginning of the picture is thus given by:

$$B = D * R = \text{vbv\_delay} * R / 90\,000 \text{ bits}$$

For example, if vbv_delay were 9 000 and R were 1,2 Mbits/s, then the number of bits in the Input Buffer would be 120 000.

The constrained parameter bitstream requires that the Input Buffer have a capacity of 327 680 bits, and B should never exceed this value.

D.5 MPEG video bitstream syntax

This clause describes the video bitstream in a top-down fashion. A sequence is the top level of video coding. It begins with a sequence header which defines important parameters needed by the decoder. The sequence header is followed by one or more groups of pictures. Groups of pictures, as the name suggests, consist of one or more individual pictures. The sequence may contain additional sequence headers. A sequence is terminated by a sequence_end_code. ISO/IEC 11172-1 allows considerable flexibility in specifying application parameters such as bit rate, picture rate, picture resolution, and picture aspect ratio. These parameters are specified in the sequence header.

If these parameters, and some others, fall within certain limits, then the bitstream is called a constrained parameter bitstream.

D.5.1 Sequence

A video sequence commences with a sequence header and is followed by one or more groups of pictures and is ended by a sequence_end_code. Additional sequence headers may appear within the sequence. In each such repeated sequence header, all of the data elements with the permitted exception of those defining quantization matrices (load_intra_quantizer_matrix, load_non_intra_quantizer_matrix and optionally

intra_quantizer_matrix and non_intra_quantizer_matrix) shall have the same values as the first sequence header. Repeating the sequence header with its data elements makes random access into the video sequence possible. The quantization matrices may be redefined as required with each repeated sequence header.

The encoder may set such parameters as the picture size and aspect ratio in the sequence header, to define the resources that a decoder requires. In addition, user data may be included.

D.5.1.1 Sequence header code

A coded sequence begins with a sequence header and the header starts with the sequence start code. Its value is:

hex: 00 00 01 B3
binary: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 1011 0011

This is a unique string of 32 bits that cannot be emulated anywhere else in the bitstream, and is byte-aligned, as are all start codes. To achieve byte alignment the encoder may precede the sequence start code with any number of zero bits. These can have a secondary function of preventing decoder input buffer underflow. This procedure is called *bit stuffing*, and may be performed before any start code. The stuffing bits must all be zero. The decoder discards all such stuffing bits.

The sequence start code, like all video start codes, begins with a string of 23 zeros. The coding scheme ensures that such a string of consecutive zeros cannot be produced by any other combination of codes, i.e. it cannot be emulated by other codes in the video bitstream. This string of zeros can only be produced by a start code, or by stuffing bits preceding a start code.

D.5.1.2 Horizontal size

This is a 12-bit number representing the width of the picture in pels, i.e. the horizontal resolution. It is an unsigned integer with the most significant bit first. A value of zero is not allowed (to avoid start code emulation) so the legal range is from 1 to 4 095. In practice values are usually a multiple of 16. At 1,5 Mbits/s, a popular horizontal resolution is 352 pels. The value 352 is derived from half the CCIR 601 horizontal resolution of 720, rounded down to the nearest multiple of 16 pels. Otherwise the encoder must fill out the picture on the right to the next higher multiple of 16 so that the last few pels can be coded in a macroblock. The decoder should discard these extra pels before display.

For efficient coding of the extra pels, the encoder should add pel values that reduce the number of bits generated in the transformed block . Replicating the last column of pels is usually superior to filling in the remaining pels with a gray level.

D.5.1.3 Vertical size

This is a 12-bit number representing the height of the picture in pels, i.e. the vertical resolution. It is an unsigned integer with the most significant bit first. A value of zero is not allowed (to avoid start code emulation) so the legal range is from 1 to 4 095. In practice values are usually a multiple of 16. Note that the maximum value of slice_vertical_position is 175 (decimal), which corresponds to a picture height of 2 800 lines. At 1,5 Mbits/s, a popular vertical resolution is 240 to 288 pels. Values of 240 pels are convenient for interfacing to 525-line NTSC systems, and values of 288 pels are more appropriate for 625-line PAL and SECAM systems.

If the vertical resolution is not a multiple of 16 lines, the encoder must fill out the picture at the bottom to the next higher multiple of 16 so that the last few lines can be coded in a macroblock. The decoder should discard these extra lines before display.

For efficient coding, replicating the last line of pels is usually better than filling in the remaining pels with a grey level.

D.5.1.4 Pel aspect ratio

This is a four-bit number which defines the shape of the pel on the viewing screen. This is needed since the horizontal and vertical picture sizes by themselves do not specify the shape of the displayed picture.

The pel aspect ratio does not give the shape directly, but is an index to the following look up table:

Table D.2 -- Pel aspect ratio

CODE	HEIGHT/WIDTH	COMMENT
0000	undefined	Forbidden
0001	1,0	square pels
0010	0,6735	
0011	0,7031	16:9 625-line
0100	0,7615	
0101	0,8055	
0110	0,8437	16:9 525-line
0111	0,8935	
1000	0,9157	702x575 at 4:3 = 0,9157
1001	0,9815	
1010	1,0255	
1011	1,0695	
1100	1,0950	711x487 at 4:3 = 1,0950
1101	1,1575	
1110	1,2015	
1111	undefined	reserved

The code 0000 is forbidden to avoid start code emulation. The code 0001 has square pels. This is appropriate for many computer graphics systems. The code 1000 is suitable for displaying pictures on the 625-line 50Hz TV system (see CCIR Recommendation 601).

$$\text{height / width} = 0{,}75 * 702 / 575 = 0{,}9157$$

The code 1100 is suitable for displaying pictures on the 525-line 60Hz TV system (see CCIR Recommendation 601).

$$\text{height / width} = 0{,}75 * 711 / 487 = 1{,}0950$$

The code 1111 is reserved for possible future extensions to this part of ISO/IEC 11172.

The remaining points in the table were filled in by interpolating between these two points 1000 and 1100 using the formula:

$$\text{aspect ratio} = 0{,}5855 + 0{,}044N$$

where N is the value of the code in table D.2. These additional pel aspect ratios might be useful for HDTV where ratios of 16:9 and 5:3 have been proposed.

It is evident that the specification does not allow all possible pel aspect ratios to be specified. We therefore presume that a certain degree of tolerance is allowable. Encoders will convert the actual pel aspect ratio to the nearest value in the table, and decoders will display the decoded values to the nearest pel aspect ratio of which they are capable.

D.5.1.5 Picture rate

This is a four-bit integer which is an index to the following table:

Table D.3 -- Picture rate

CODE	PICTURES PER SECOND
0000	Forbidden
0001	23,976
0010	24
0011	25
0100	29,97
0101	30
0110	50
0111	59,94
1000	60
1001	Reserved
.	.
1111	Reserved

The allowed picture rates are commonly available sources of analog or digital sequences. One advantage in not allowing greater flexibility in picture rates is that standard techniques may be used to convert to the display rate of the decoder if it does not match the coded rate.

D.5.1.6 Bit rate

The bit rate is an 18-bit integer giving the bit rate of the data channel in units of 400 bits/s. The bit rate is assumed to be constant for the entire sequence. The actual bit rate is rounded up to the nearest multiple of 400 bits/s. For example, a bit rate of 830 100 bits/s would be rounded up to 830 400 bits/s giving a coded bit rate of 2 076 units.

If all 18 bits are 1 then the bitstream is intended for variable bit rate operation. The value zero is forbidden.

For constant bit rate operation, the bit rate is used by the decoder in conjunction with the vbv_delay parameter in the picture header to maintain synchronization of the decoder with a constant rate data channel. If the stream is multiplexed using ISO/IEC 11172-1, the time-stamps and system clock reference information defined in ISO/IEC 11172-1 provide a more appropriate tool for performing this function.

D.5.1.7 Marker bit

The bit rate is followed by a single reserved bit which is always set to 1. This bit prevents emulation of start codes.

D.5.1.8 VBV buffer size

The buffer size is a 10-bit integer giving the minimum required size of the input buffer in the model decoder in units of 16 384 bits (2 048 bytes). For example, a buffer size of 20 would require an input buffer of 20 x 16 384 = 327 680 bits (= 40 960 bytes). Decoders may provide more memory than this, but if they provide less they will probably run into buffer overflow problems while the sequence is being decoded.

D.5.1.9 Constrained Parameter flag

If certain parameters specified in the bitstream fall within predefined limits, then the bitstream is called a constrained parameter bitstream. Thus the constrained parameter bitstream is a standard of performance giving guidelines to encoders and decoders to facilitate the exchange of bitstreams.

The bitrate parameter allows values up to about 100 Mbits/s, but a constrained parameter bitstream must have a bit rate of 1,856 Mbits/s or less. Thus the bit rate parameter must be 3 712 or less.

The picture rate parameter allows picture rates up to 60 pictures/s, but a constrained parameter bitstream must have a picture rate of 30 pictures/s or less.

The resolution of the coded picture is also specified in the sequence header. Horizontal resolutions up to 4 095 pels are allowed by the syntax, but in a constrained parameter bitstream the resolution is limited to 768 pels or less. Vertical resolutions up to 4 095 pels are allowed, but that in a constrained parameter

bitstream is limited to 576 pels or less. In a constrained parameter bitstream, the total number of macroblocks per picture is limited to 396. This sets a limit on the maximum area of the picture which is only about one quarter of the area of a 720x576 pel picture. In a constrained parameter bitstream, the pel rate is limited to 2 534 400 pels/s. For a given picture rate, this sets another limit on the maximum area of the picture. If the picture has the maximum area of 396 macroblocks, then the picture rate is restricted to 25 pictures/s or less. If the picture rate has the maximum constrained value of 30 pictures/s the maximum area is limited to 330 macroblocks.

A constrained parameter bitstream can be decoded by a model decoder with a buffer size of 327 680 bits without overflowing or underflowing during the decoding process. The maximum buffer size that can be specified for a constrained parameter bitstream is 20 units.

A constrained parameter bitstream uses a forward_f_code or backward_f_code less than or equal to 4. This constrains the maximum range of motion vectors that can be represented in the bitstream (see table D.7).

If all these conditions are met, then the bitstream is constrained and the constrained_parameters_flag in the sequence header should be set to 1. If any parameter is exceeded, the flag shall be set to 0 to inform decoders that more than a minimum capability is required to decode the sequence.

D.5.1.10 Load intra quantizer matrix

This is a one-bit flag. If it is set to 1, sixty-four 8-bit integers follow. These define an 8 by 8 set of weights which are used to quantize the DCT coefficients. They are transmitted in the zigzag scan order shown in figure D.30. None of these weights can be zero. The first weight must be eight which matches the fixed quantization level of the dc coefficient.

If the flag is set to zero, the intra quantization matrix must be reset to the following default value:

8	16	19	22	26	27	29	34
16	16	22	24	27	29	34	37
19	22	26	27	29	34	34	38
22	22	26	27	29	34	37	40
22	26	27	29	32	35	40	48
26	27	29	32	35	40	48	58
26	27	29	34	38	46	56	69
27	29	35	38	46	56	69	83

Figure D.15 -- Default intra quantization matrix

The default quantization matrix is based on work performed by ISO/IEC JTC1 SC29/WG10 (JPEG) [6]. Experience has shown that it gives good results over a wide range of video material. For resolutions close to 350x250 there should normally be no need to redefine the intra quantization matrix. If the picture resolution departs significantly from this nominal resolution, then some other matrix may give perceptibly better results.

The weights increase to the right and down. This reflects the human visual system which is less sensitive to quantization noise at higher frequencies.

D.5.1.11 Load non-intra quantizer matrix

This is a one-bit flag. If it is set to 1, sixty-four 8-bit integers follow in zigzag scan order. None of these integers can be zero.

If the flag is set to zero, the non-intra quantization matrix must be reset to the following default value which consists of all 16s.

16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16

Figure D.16 -- Default non-intra quantization matrix

This flat default quantization matrix was adopted from H.261 which uses a flat matrix for the equivalent of P-pictures [5]. Little work has been performed to determine the optimum non-intra matrix for MPEG video coding, but evidence suggests that it is more dependent on video material than is the intra matrix. The optimum non-intra matrix may be somewhere between the flat default non-intra matrix and the strongly frequency-dependent values of the default intra matrix.

D.5.1.12 Extension data

This start code is byte-aligned and is 32 bits long. Its value is

hex: 00 00 01 B5
binary: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 1011 0101

It may be preceded by any number of zeros. If it is present then it will be followed by an undetermined number of data bytes terminated by the next start code. These data bytes are reserved for future extensions to this part of ISO/IEC 11172, and should not be generated by encoders. MPEG video decoders should have the capability to discard any extension data found.

D.5.1.13 User data

A user data start code may follow the optional extension data. This start code is byte-aligned and is 32 bits long. Its value is

hex: 00 00 01 B2
binary: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 1011 0010

It may be preceded by any number of zeros. If it is present then it will be followed by an undetermined number of data bytes terminated by the next start code. These data bytes can be used by the encoder for any purpose. The only restriction on the data is that they cannot emulate a start code, even if not byte-aligned. This means that a string of 23 consecutive zeros must not occur. One way to prevent emulation is to force the most significant bit of alternate bytes to be a 1.

In closed encoder-decoder systems the decoder may be able to use the data. In the more general case, decoders should be capable of discarding the user data.

D.5.2 Group of pictures

Two distinct picture orderings exist, the display order and the bitstream order (as they appear in the video bitstream). A group of pictures (gop) is a set of pictures which are contiguous in display order. A group of pictures must contain at least one I-picture. This required picture may be followed by any number of I and P-pictures. Any number of B-pictures may be interspersed between each pair of I or P-pictures, and may also precede the first I-picture.

Property 1. A group of pictures, in bitstream order, must start with an I-picture and may be followed by any number of I, P or B-pictures in any order.

Property 2. Another property of a group of pictures is that it must begin, in display order, with an I or a B-picture, and must end with an I or a P-picture. The smallest group of pictures consists of a single I-picture, whereas the largest size is unlimited.

The original concept of a group of pictures was a set of pictures that could be coded and displayed independently of any other group. In the final version of this part of ISO/IEC 11172 this is not always true, and any B-pictures preceding (in display order) the first I-picture in a group may require the last picture in the previous group in order to be decoded. Nevertheless encoders can still construct groups of pictures which are independent of one another. One way to do this is to omit any B-pictures preceding the first I-picture. Another way is to allow such B-pictures, but to code them using only backward motion compensation.

Property 3. From a coding point of view, a concisely stated property is that a group of pictures begins with a group of pictures header, and either ends at the next group of pictures header or at the next sequence header or at the end of sequence, whichever comes first.

Some examples of groups of pictures are given below:

```
I
I  P  P
I  B  P  B  P
B  B  I  B  P  B  P
B  B  I  B  B  P  B  B  P  B  B  P
B  I  B  B  B  B  P  B  I  B  B  I  I
```

Figure D.17 -- Examples of groups of pictures in display order

These examples illustrate what is possible, and do not constitute a suggestion for structures of groups of pictures.

Group of pictures start code

The group of pictures header starts with the Group of Pictures start code. This code is byte-aligned and is 32 bits long. Its value is

hex: 00 00 01 B8
binary: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 1011 1000

It may be preceded by any number of zeros. The encoder may have inserted some zeros to get byte alignment, and may have inserted additional zeros to prevent buffer underflow. An editor may have inserted zeros in order to match the vbv_delay parameter of the first picture in the group.

Time code

A time code of 25 bits immediately follows the group of pictures start code. This encodes the same information as the SMPTE time code [4].

The time code can be broken down into six fields as shown in table D.4.

Table D.4 -- Time code fields

FIELD	BITS	VALUES
Drop frame flag	1	
Hours	5	0 to 23
Minutes	6	0 to 59
Fixed	1	1
Seconds	6	0 to 59
Picture number	6	0 to 60

The time code refers to the first picture in the group in display order, i.e. the first picture with a temporal reference of zero. The SMPTE time code is included to provide a video time identification to applications. It may be discontinuous. The presentation time-stamp in the System layer (Part 1) has a much higher precision and identifies the time of presentation of the picture.

Closed GOP

A one bit flag follows the time code. It denotes whether the group of pictures is open or closed. Closed groups can be decoded without using decoded pictures of the previous group for motion compensation, whereas open groups require such pictures to be available.

A typical example of a closed group is shown in figure D.18a.

I	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B	P
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12

(a) closed group

B	B	I	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B	P
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14

(b) open or closed group

Figure D.18 -- Example groups of pictures in display order

A less typical example of a closed group is shown in figure D.18b. In this example, the B-pictures which precede the first I-picture must use backward motion compensation only, i.e. any motion compensation must be based only on picture number 2 in the group.

If the closed_gop flag is set to 0 then the group is open. The first B-pictures that precede the first I-picture in the group may have been encoded using the last picture in the previous group for motion compensation.

Broken link

A one bit flag follows the closed_gop flag. It denotes whether the B-pictures which precede the first I-picture in the GOP can be correctly decoded. If it is set to 1, these pictures cannot be correctly decoded because the I-picture or P-picture from the previous group pictures that is required to form the predictions is not available (presumably because the preceding group of pictures has been removed by editing). The decoder will probably choose not to display these B-pictures.

If the sequence is edited so that the original group of pictures no longer precedes the current group of pictures then this flag normally will be set to 1 by the editor. However, if the closed_gop flag for the current group of pictures is set, then the editor should not set the broken_link flag. Because the group of pictures is closed, the first B-pictures (if any) can still be decoded correctly.

Extension data

This start code is byte-aligned and is 32 bits long. Its value is

hex: 00 00 01 B5
binary: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 1011 0101

It may be preceded by any number of zeros. If it is present then it will be followed by an undetermined number of data bytes terminated by the next start code. These data bytes are reserved for future extensions to this part of ISO/IEC 11172, and should not be generated by encoders. MPEG video decoders should have the capability to discard any extension data found.

User data

A user data start code may follow the optional extension data. This start code is byte-aligned and is 32 bits long. Its value is

hex: 00 00 01 B2
binary: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 1011 0010

It may be preceded by any number of zeros. If it is present then it will be followed by an undetermined number of data bytes terminated by the next start code. These data bytes can be used by the encoder for any purpose. The only restriction on the data is that they cannot emulate a start code, even if not byte-aligned.

This means that a string of 23 consecutive zeros must not occur. One way to prevent emulation is to force the most significant bit of alternate bytes to be a 1.

In closed encoder-decoder systems the decoder may be able to use the data. In the more general case, decoders should be capable of discarding the user data.

D.5.3 Picture

The picture layer contains all the coded information for one picture. The header identifies the temporal reference of the picture, the picture coding type, the delay in the video buffer verifier (VBV) and, if appropriate, the range of motion vectors used.

D.5.3.1 Picture header and start code

A *picture* begins with a picture header. The header starts with a picture start code. This code is byte-aligned and is 32 bits long. Its value is:

hex: 00 00 01 00
binary: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 0000 0000

It may be preceded by any number of zeros.

D.5.3.2 Temporal reference

The Temporal Reference is a ten-bit number which can be used to define the order in which the pictures must be displayed. It may be useful since pictures are not transmitted in display order, but rather in the order which the decoder needs to decode them. The first picture, in display order, in each group must have Temporal Reference equal to zero. This is incremented by one for each picture in the group.

Some example groups of pictures with their Temporal Reference numbers are given below:

Example (a) in display order	**I** 0	**B** 1	**P** 2	**B** 3	**P** 4							
Example (a) in decoding order	**I** 0	**P** 2	**B** 1	**P** 4	**B** 3							
Example (b) in display order	**B** 0	**B** 1	**I** 2	**B** 3	**B** 4	**P** 5	**B** 6	**B** 7	**P** 8	**B** 9	**B** 10	**P** 11
Example (b) in coded order	**I** 2	**B** 0	**B** 1	**P** 5	**B** 3	**B** 4	**P** 8	**B** 6	**B** 7	**P** 11	**B** 9	**B** 10
Example (c) in display order	**B** 0	**I** 1	**B** 2	**B** 3	**B** 4	**B** 5	**P** 6	**B** 7	**I** 8	**B** 9	**B** 10	**I** 11	**I** 12
Example (c) in coded order	**I** 1	**B** 0	**P** 6	**B** 2	**B** 3	**B** 4	**B** 5	**I** 8	**B** 7	**I** 11	**B** 9	**B** 10	**I** 12

Figure D.19 -- Examples of groups of pictures and temporal references

If there are more than 1024 pictures in a group, then the Temporal Reference is reset to zero and then increments anew. This is illustrated below:

B 0	**B** 1	**I** 2	**B** 3	**B** 4	**P** 5	...	**P** 1 022	**B** 1 023	**B** 0	**P** 1	...	**P** 472	**B** 473	**B** 474	**P** 475	display order

Figure D.20 -- Example group of pictures containing 1 500 pictures

D.5.3.3 Picture coding type

A three bit number follows the temporal reference. This is an index into the following table defining the type of picture.

Table D.5 -- Picture types

CODE	PICTURE TYPE
000	Forbidden
001	I-picture
010	P-picture
011	B-picture
100	D Picture
101	Reserved
110	Reserved
111	Reserved

The various types of pictures are described in D.2.3. Codes 101 through 111 are reserved for future extensions to this part of ISO/IEC 11172. Decoders should be capable of discarding all pictures of this type, and scan for the next picture start code, group start code or sequence start code. Code 000 will never be used to avoid start code emulation.

D.5.3.4 VBV delay

For constant bit rate operation, vbv_delay can be used at the start of decoding and after a random access to ensure that the correct number of bits have been read by the decoder before the first picture is displayed.

The buffer fullness is not specified in bits but rather in units of time. The vbv_delay is a 16-bit number defining the time needed in units of 1/90 000 s to fill the input buffer of the model decoder from an empty state to the correct state at the bit rate specified in the sequence header.

For example, suppose the vbv_delay had a decimal value of 30000, then the time delay would be:

$$D = 30\,000 / 90\,000 = 1/3 \text{ s}$$

If the channel bit rate were 1,2 Mbits/s then the contents of the buffer before the picture is decoded would be:

$$B = 1\,200\,000 / 3 = 400\,000 \text{ bits}$$

If the decoder determined that its actual buffer fullness differed significantly from this value, then it would have to adopt some strategy for regaining synchronization.

The meaning of vbv_delay is undefined for variable bit rate operation.

D.5.3.5 Full pel forward vector

This is a one bit flag giving the precision of the forward motion vectors. If it is 1 then the precision of the vectors is in integer pels, if it is zero then the precision is half a pel. Thus if the flag is set to one the vectors have twice the range than they do if the flag set to zero.

This flag is present only in the headers of P-pictures and B-pictures. It is absent in I-pictures and D pictures.

D.5.3.6 Forward f-code

This is a three-bit number and, like the full pel forward vector flag, is present only in the headers of P-pictures and B-pictures. It provides information used for decoding the coded forward vectors and controls the maximum size of the forward vectors that can be coded. It can take only values of 1 through 7; a value of zero is forbidden.

Two parameters used in decoding the forward motion vectors are derived from forward_f_code, forward_r_size and forward_f.

The forward_r_size is one less than the forward_f_code and so can take values 0 through 6.

The forward_f parameter is given by table D.6:

Table D.6 -- f_codes

forward/backward_f_code	forward/backward_f
1	1
2	2
3	4
4	8
5	16
6	32
7	64

D.5.3.7 Full pel backward vector

This is a one bit flag giving the precision of the backward motion vectors. If it is 1 then the precision of the vectors is in integer pels, if it is zero then the precision is half a pel. Thus if the flag is set to one the vectors have twice the range than they do if the flag set to zero.

This flag is only present in the headers of B-pictures. It is absent in I-pictures, P-pictures and D pictures.

D.5.3.8 Backward f-code

This is a three-bit number and, like the full pel backward vector flag, is present only in the headers of B-pictures. It provides information used for decoding the coded backward vectors. It can take only values of 1 through 7; a value of zero is forbidden.

The backward_f parameter is derived from the backward_f_code and is given by table D.6

D.5.3.9 Extra picture information

Extra picture information is the next field in the picture header. Any number of information bytes may be present. An information byte is preceded by a flag bit which is set to 1. Information bytes are therefore generally not byte-aligned. The last information byte is followed by a zero bit. The smallest size of this field is therefore one bit, a 0, that has no information bytes. The largest size is unlimited. The following example has 16 bits of extra information denoted by E:

1 E E E E E E E E 1 E E E E E E E E 0

Where E is an extra information bit.

The extra information bytes are reserved for future extensions to this part of ISO/IEC 11172. The meaning of these bytes is currently undefined, so encoders must not generate such bytes and decoders must be capable of discarding them.

D.5.3.10 Extension data

This start code is byte-aligned and is 32 bits long. Its value is:

hex: 00 00 01 B5
binary: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 1011 0101

It may be preceded by any number of zeros. If it is present then it will be followed by an undetermined number of data bytes terminated by the next start code. These data bytes are reserved for future extensions to this part of ISO/IEC 11172, and should not be generated by encoders. MPEG video decoders must be capable of discarding them.

D.5.3.11 User data

This start code is byte-aligned and is 32 bits long. Its value is

hex: 00 00 01 B2
binary: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 1011 0010

It may be preceded by any number of zeros. If it is present then it will be followed by an undetermined number of data bytes terminated by the next start code. These data bytes can be used by the encoder for any purpose. The only restriction on the data is that they cannot emulate a start code, even if not byte-aligned. One way to prevent emulation is to force the most significant bit of alternate bytes to be a 1.

In closed encoder-decoder systems the decoder may be able to use the data. In the more general case, decoders should be capable of discarding the user data.

D.5.4 Slice

Pictures are divided into slices. Each slice consists of an integral number of macroblocks in raster scan order. Slices can be of different sizes within a picture, and the division in one picture need not be the same as the division in any other picture. Slices can begin and end at any macroblock in a picture subject to the following restrictions. The first slice must begin at the top left of the picture, and the end of the last slice must be the bottom right macroblock of the picture. There can be no gaps between slices, nor can slices overlap. The minimum number of slices in a picture is one, the maximum number is equal to the number of macroblocks.

Each slice starts with a slice start code, the exact value of which defines the vertical position of the slice. This is followed by a code that sets the quantization step-size. At the start of each slice the predictors for the dc coefficient values and the predictors for the vector decoding are all reset. The horizontal position of the start of the slice is given by the macroblock address of the first macroblock in the slice. The result of all this is that, within a picture, a slice can be decoded without information from the previous slices. Therefore, if a data error occurs, decoding can begin again at the subsequent slice.

If the data are to be used in an error free environment, then one slice per picture may be appropriate. If the environment is noisy, then one slice per row of macroblocks may be more desirable, as shown in figure D.21.

1 begin	end 1
2 begin	end 2
3 begin	end 3
4 begin	end 4
5 begin	end 5
6 begin	end 6
7 begin	end 7
8 begin	end 8
9 begin	end 9
10 begin	end 10
11 begin	end 11
12 begin	end 12
13 begin	end 13

Figure D.21 -- Possible arrangement of slices in a 256x192 picture

In this figure and in the next, each strip is one macroblock high, i.e. 16 pels high.

Since each slice header requires 40 bits, there is some penalty for including more than the minimum number of slices. For example, a sequence with a vertical resolution of 240 lines coded at 30 pictures/s requires approximately 40x30 = 1 200 bits/s for the slice headers using one slice per picture, and 40x15x30 = 18 000 bits/s with one slice per row, an additional overhead of 16 800 bits/s. The calculation is approximate and underestimates the impact, since the inclusion of a slice imposes additional requirements that the macroblock immediately before the slice header be coded, as well as the first macroblock in the slice.

The coding structure permits great flexibility in dividing a picture up into slices. One possible arrangement is shown in figure D.22.

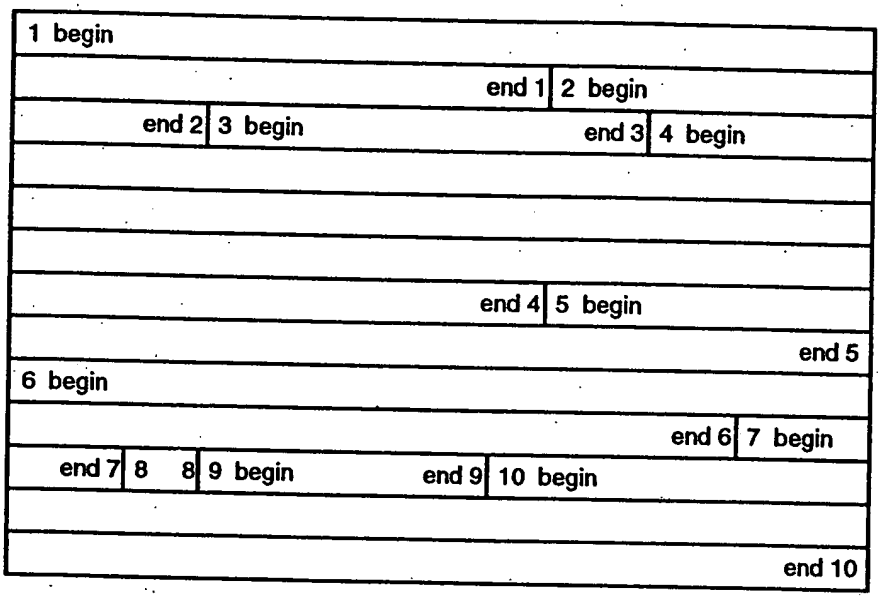


Figure D.22 -- Possible arrangement of slices in a 256x192 picture

This division into slices is given for illustrative purposes only. It is not intended as a suggestion on how to divide a picture into slices.

D.5.4.1 Slice header and start code

Slices start with a slice header. Each slice header starts with a slice start code. This code is byte-aligned and is 32 bits long. The last eight bits can take on a range of values which define the vertical position of the slice in the picture. The permitted slice start codes are:

hex:	from	00 00 01 01
	to	00 00 01 AF
binary:	from	0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 0000 0001
	to	0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 1010 1111

Each slice start code may be preceded by any number of zeros.

The last 8 bits of the slice start code give the slice vertical position, i.e the vertical position of the first macroblock in the slice in units of macroblocks starting with position 1 at the top of the picture. A useful variable is macroblock row. This is similar to slice vertical position except that row 0 is at the top of the picture. Thus

slice vertical position = macroblock row + 1

For example, a slice start code of 00000101 hex means that the first macroblock in the slice is at vertical position 1 or macroblock row 0, i.e. at the top of the picture. A slice start code of 00000120 hex means

that the first macroblock is at vertical position 32 or macroblock row 31, i.e. at the 496th row of pels. It is possible for two or more slices to have the same vertical position.

The maximum vertical position is 175 units. A slice with this position would require a vertical size of 175x16 = 2 800 pels.

The horizontal position of the first macroblock in the slice can be calculated from its macroblock address increment. Thus its position in the picture can be determined without referring to any previous slice or macroblock. Thus a decoder may decode any slice in a picture without having decoded any other slice in the same picture. This feature allows decoders to recover from bit errors by searching for the next slice start code and then resuming decoding.

D.5.4.2 Quantizer scale

The quantizer scale is a five-bit integer which is used by the decoder to calculate the DCT coefficients from the transmitted quantized coefficients. A value of 0 is forbidden, so the quantizer scale can have any value between 1 and 31 inclusive.

Note in addition that the quantizer scale may be set at any macroblock.

D.5.4.3 Extra slice information

Extra slice information forms the last field in the slice header. Any number of information bytes may be present. An information byte is preceded by a flag bit which is set to 1. Information bytes are therefore generally not byte-aligned. The last information byte is followed by a zero bit. The smallest size of this field is therefore one bit, a 0, that has no information bytes. The largest size is unlimited. The following example has 24 bits of extra information denoted by E:

1EEEEEEEE1EEEEEEEE1EEEEEEEE0

The extra information bytes are reserved for future extensions to this part of ISO/IEC 11172. The meaning of these bytes is currently undefined, so encoders must not generate such bytes and decoders must discard them.

The slice header is followed by code defining the macroblocks in the slice.

D.5.5 Macroblock

Slices are divided into macroblocks of 16 x 16 pels. Macroblocks are coded with a header that contains information on the macroblock address, macroblock type, and the optional quantizer scale. The header is followed by data defining each of the six blocks in the macroblock It is convenient to discuss the macroblock header fields in the order in which they are coded.

D.5.5.1 Macroblock stuffing

The first field in the macroblock header is "macroblock stuffing". This is an optional field, and may be inserted or omitted at the discretion of the encoder. If present it consists of any number of 11-bit strings with the pattern "0000 0001 111". This stuffing code is used by the encoder to prevent underflow, and is discarded by the decoder. If the encoder determines that underflow is about to occur, then it can insert as many stuffing codes into the first field of the macroblock header it likes.

Note that an encoder has other strategies to prevent buffer underflow. It can insert stuffing bits immediately before a start code. It can reduce the quantizer scale to increase the number of coded coefficients. It can even start a new slice.

D.5.5.2 Macroblock address increment and macroblock escape

Macroblocks have an address which is the number of the macroblock in raster scan order. The top left macroblock in a picture has address 0, the next one to the right has address 1 and so on. If there are M macroblocks in a picture, then the bottom right macroblock has an address M-1.

The address of a macroblock is indicated by transmitting the difference between the addresses of the current macroblock and the previously coded macroblock. This difference is called the macroblock address increment. In I-pictures, all macroblocks are coded and so the macroblock address increment is nearly always one. There is one exception. At the beginning of each slice the macroblock address is set to that of the right hand macroblock of the previous row. At the beginning of the picture it is set to -1. If a slice does not start at the left edge of the picture, then the macroblock address increment for the first macroblock in the slice will be larger than one. For example, the picture of figure D.22 has 16 macroblocks per row. At the start of slice 2 the macroblock address is set to 15 which is the address of the macroblock at the right hand edge of the top row of macroblocks. If the first slice contained 26 macroblocks, 10 of them would be in the second row, so the address of the first macroblock in slice 2 would be 26 and the macroblock address increment would be 11.

Macroblock address increments are coded using the VLC codes in the table in B.1.

It can be seen that there is no code to indicate a macroblock address increment of zero. This is why the macroblock address is set to -1 rather than zero at the top of a picture. The first macroblock will have an increment of one making its address equal to zero.

The macroblock address increments allow the position of the macroblock within the picture to be determined. For example, assume that a slice header has the start code equal to 00 00 01 0A hex, that the picture width is 256 pels, and that a macroblock address increment code 0000111 is in the macroblock header of the first macroblock in the slice. A picture width of 256 pels implies that there are 16 macroblocks per row in this picture. The slice start code tells us that the slice vertical position is 10, and so the macroblock row is 9. The slice header sets the previous macroblock address to the last macroblock on row 8, which has address 143. The macroblock address increment VLC leads to a macroblock address increment of 8, and so the macroblock address of the first macroblock in the slice is 143 + 8 = 151.

The macroblock row may be calculated from the address:

$$\text{macroblock row} = \text{macroblock address} / \text{macroblock width}$$

$$= 151 / 16$$

$$= 9$$

The division symbol signifies integer truncation, not rounding.

The macroblock column may also be calculated from the address:

$$\text{macroblock column} = \text{macroblock address} \% \text{macroblock width}$$
$$= 151 \% 16$$
$$= 7$$

Columns are numbered from the left of the picture starting at 0.

There are two special codewords: escape and stuffing.

The escape code means "add 33 to the following macroblock address increment". This allows increments greater than 33 to be coded. For example, an increment of 40 would be coded as escape plus an increment of 7:

0000 0001 0000 0010

An increment of 70 would be coded as two escape codes followed by the code for an increment of 4:

0000 0001 0000 0000 0010 0000 11

The stuffing code is included since the decoder must be able to distinguish it from increment codes. It is used by the encoder to prevent underflow, and is discarded by the decoder.

D.5.5.3 Macroblock types

Each of the picture types I, P, and B, have their own macroblock types. See, respectively, D.6.3, D.6.4, and D.6.5 for the codes and their descriptions.

D.5.5.4 Motion horizontal/vertical forward/backward codes

The interpretation of these codes is explained in D.6.2.3.

D.5.5.5 Motion horizontal/vertical forward/backward R

The interpretation of these codes is explained in D.6.2.3.

D.5.5.6 Coded block pattern

This code describes which blocks within the macroblock are coded and transmitted. The interpretation of this code is explained in D.6.4.2.

D.5.5.7 End of macroblock

This code is used only in D-pictures and is described in D.6.6.

D.5.6 Block

A block is an array of 8 by 8 component pel values, treated as a unit and input to the Discrete Cosine Transform (DCT). Blocks of 8 by 8 pels are transformed into arrays of 8 by 8 DCT coefficients using the two dimensional discrete cosine transform.

D.6 Coding MPEG video

D.6.1 Rate control and adaptive quantization

The encoder must control the bit rate so that the model decoder input buffer neither overflows nor underflows. Since the model decoder removes all the bits associated with a picture from the input buffer instantaneously, it is necessary to control only the total number of bits per picture. The encoder should allocate the total numbers of bits among the various types of pictures so that the perceived quality is suitably balanced. The distribution will vary with the scene content and with the particular distribution of the three picture types (I, P and B-pictures).

Within a picture the encoder should allocate the total number of bits available among the macroblocks to maximize the visual quality of the picture.

One method by which an encoder controls the bit rate is to vary the quantizer scale. This is set in each slice header, and may be set at the beginning of any macroblock, giving the encoder excellent control over the bit rate within a picture.

D.6.1.1 Rate control within a sequence

For a typical coding scheme represented by the following group of pictures in display order:

B B I B B P B B P B B P B B P

it has been found that good results can be obtained by matching the visual quality of the I and P-pictures, and by reducing the code size of the B-pictures to save bits giving a generally lower quality for the B-pictures.

The best allocation of bits among the picture types depends on the scene content. Work of the MPEG video committee suggests that allotting P-pictures about 2-5 times as many bits as B-pictures, and allotting I-pictures up to 3 times as many bits as P-pictures gives good results for typical natural scenes. If there is little motion or change in the video, then a greater proportion of the bits should be allotted to the I-pictures.

If there is a lot of motion or change, then the proportion allotted to I-pictures should be reduced and most of the savings given to the P-pictures.

A reasonable encoder algorithm is to start with the foregoing estimates, then reallocate bits dynamically depending on the nature of the video.

D.6.1.2 Rate control within a picture

If the buffer is heading toward overflow, the quantizer scale should be increased. If this action is not sufficient to prevent an impending overflow then, as a last resort, the encoder could discard high frequency DCT coefficients and transmit only low frequency ones. Although this would probably produce visible artifacts in the decoded video, it would in no way compromise the validity of the coded bitstream.

If the buffer is heading toward underflow, the quantizer scale should be reduced. If this is not sufficient, the encoder can insert macroblock stuffing into the bitstream, or add leading zeros to start codes.

Under normal circumstances, the encoder calculates and monitors the state of the model decoder buffer and changes the quantizer scale to avert both overflow and underflow problems.

One simple algorithm that helps accomplish this is to monitor the buffer fullness. Assume that the bits have been allocated among the various picture types, and that an average quantizer scale for each picture type has been established. The actual buffer fullness at any macroblock in a picture can be calculated and compared with the nominal fullness, i.e. the value that would be obtained if the bits were uniformly distributed among all the macroblocks in the picture. If the buffer fullness is larger than the nominal value, then the quantizer scale should be set higher than the average, whereas if the buffer fullness is smaller than the nominal, the quantizer scale should be set lower than the average.

If the quantizer scale is kept constant over a picture, then, for a given number of coding bits, the total mean square error of the coded picture will tend to be close to the minimum. However, the visual appearance of most pictures can be improved by varying the quantizer scale over the picture, making it smaller in smooth areas of the picture and larger in busy areas. This technique reduces the visibility of blockiness in smooth areas at the expense of increased quantization noise in the busy areas where, however, it is masked by the image detail.

Thus a good algorithm for controlling the bitrate within a picture adjusts the quantizer scale depending on both the calculated buffer fullness and on the local image content. Examples of techniques for rate control and quantization may be found in [7][8].

D.6.1.3 Buffer fullness

To give the best visual quality, the encoder should almost fill the input buffer before instructing the decoder to start decoding.

D.6.2 Motion estimation and compensation

D.6.2.1 Motion compensation

P-pictures use motion compensation to exploit temporal redundancy in the video. Decoders construct a predicted block of pels from pels in a previously transmitted picture. Motion within the pictures (e.g. a pan) usually implies that the pels in the previous picture will be in a different position from the pels in the current block, and the displacement is given by motion vectors encoded in the bitstream. The predicted block is usually a good estimate of the current block, and it is usually more efficient to transmit the motion vector plus the difference between the predicted block and the current block, than to transmit a description of the current block by itself.

Consider the following typical group of pictures.

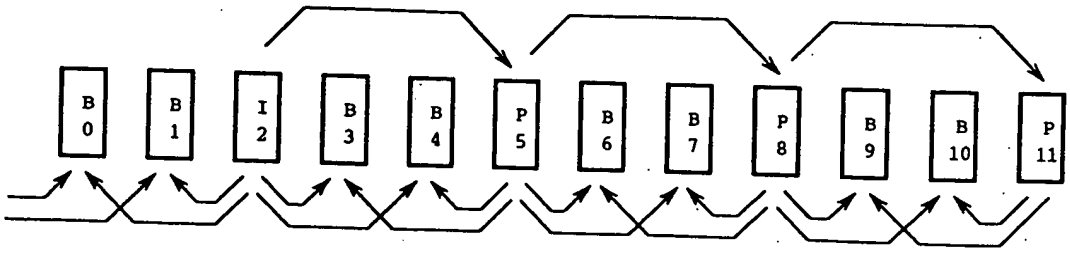


Figure D.23 -- Group of pictures in display order

The I-picture, picture 2, is decoded without requiring any motion vectors. The first P-picture, number 5, is decoded using motion vectors from picture 2. This motion compensation is called forward motion compensation since it is forward in time. Motion vectors define the motion of a macroblock, i.e. the motion of a 16x16 block of luminance pels and the associated chrominance components. Typically, most macroblocks in a P-picture use motion compensation. Non-zero motion vectors are transmitted differentially with reference to the last transmitted motion vector.

The transmitted vectors usually have a precision of half a pel. The maximum range of the vector is set by the forward_f parameter in the picture header. Sometimes, if the motion is unusually large, the range may be doubled and the accuracy reduced to integer pels, by the full_pel_forward_vector bit in the picture header.

A positive value of the horizontal or vertical component of the motion vector signifies that the prediction is formed from pels in the referenced picture which are spatially to the right or below the pels being predicted.

Not all macroblocks in a P-picture necessarily use motion compensation. Some macroblocks, as defined by the transmitted macroblock type (see table B.2b), may be intra-coded, and these are reconstructed without motion compensation. Full details defining the method of decoding the vectors and constructing the motion-compensated macroblock are given in 2.4.4.2.

P-picture 8 in figure D.23 uses forward motion compensation from picture 5. P-pictures always use forward motion compensation from the last transmitted I or P-picture.

B-pictures may use motion compensation from the previous I or P-picture, from the next (in display order) I or P-picture, or both; i.e., from the last two transmitted I or P-pictures.

Prediction is called forward if reference is made to a picture in the past and called backward if reference is made to a picture in the future. For example, B-picture 3 in figure D.23 uses forward motion compensation from I-picture 2, and backward motion compensation from P-picture 5. B-pictures may use both forward and backward motion compensation and average the result. This operation is called interpolative motion compensation.

All three types of motion compensation are useful, and typically are used in coding B-pictures. Interpolative motion compensation has the advantage of averaging any noise present. Forward or backward motion compensation may be more useful near the edges of pictures, or where a foreground object is passing in front of a fixed or slow moving background.

Note that this technique of coding with P and B-pictures increases the coding efficiency. B-pictures can have greater errors of reconstruction than I or P-pictures to conserve coding bits, but since they are not used as the basis of motion compensation for future pictures, these errors may be tolerated.

D.6.2.2 Motion estimation

Motion compensation in a decoder is straightforward, but motion estimation which includes determining the best motion vectors and which must be performed by the encoder, presents a formidable computational challenge.

Various methods are available to the encoder. The more computationally intensive methods tend to give better results, so there is tradeoff to be made in the encoder: computational power, and hence cost, versus coded video quality.

Using a search strategy the encoder attempts to match the pels in a macroblock with those in a previous or future picture. The vector corresponding to the best match is reported after the search is completed.

D.6.2.2.1 Block matching criteria

In seeking a match, the encoder must decide whether to use the decoded past and future pictures as the reference, or use the original past and future pictures. For motion estimation, use of the decoded pictures by the encoder gives the smallest error in the error picture, whereas use of the original pictures gives the most accurate motion vectors. The choice depends on whether the artifacts of increased noise, or greater spurious motion are judged to be the more objectionable. There is usually little or no difference in quality between the two methods. Note that the decoder does not perform motion estimation. It performs motion compensated prediction and interpolation using vectors calculated in the encoder and stored in the bitstream. In motion compensated prediction and interpolation, both the encoder and decoder must use the decoded pictures as the references.

Several matching criteria are available. The mean square error of the difference between the motion-compensated block and the current block is an obvious choice. Another possible criterion is the mean absolute difference between the motion-compensated block and the current block.

For half pel shifts, the pel values could be interpolated by several methods. Since the decoder uses a simple linear interpolation, there is little reason to use a more complex method in the encoder. The linear interpolation method given in this part of ISO/IEC 11172 is equivalent to the following. Consider four pels having values A, B, D and E as shown in figure D.24:

```
A   h   B
v   c
D       E
```

Figure D.24 -- Interpolation of half pel shifts

The value of the horizontally interpolated pel is

$$h = (A + B) // 2$$

where the double division symbol means division with rounding to the nearest integer. Half integer values are to be rounded to the next higher value. Thus if A = 4 and B = 9 then h = 6.5 which is rounded up to 7.

The value of the vertically interpolated pel is

$$v = (A + D) // 2$$

The value of the central interpolated pel is

$$c = (A + B + D + E) // 4$$

D.6.2.2.2 Search range

Once a block matching criterion has been selected, some kind of search strategy must be adopted. This must recognize the limitations of the VLC tables used to code the vectors. The maximum range of the vector depends upon forward_f_code or backward_f_code. The motion vector ranges are given in table D.7.

Table D.7 -- Range of motion vectors

forward_f_code or backward_f_code	Motion vector range	
	full_pel=0	full_pel=1
1	-8 to 7,5	-16 to 15
2	-16 to 15,5	-32 to 31
3	-32 to 31,5	-64 to 63
4	-64 to 63,5	-128 to 127
5	-128 to 127,5	-256 to 255
6	-256 to 255,5	-512 to 511
7	-512 to 511,5	-1 024 to 1 023

The range depends on the value of full_pel_forward_vector or full_pel_backward_vector in the picture header. Thus if all the motion vectors were found to be 15 pels or less, the encoder would usually select half pel accuracy and a forward_f_code or backward_f_code value of 2.

The search must be constrained to take place within the boundaries of the decoded reference picture. Motion vectors which refer to pels outside the picture are not allowed. Any bitstream which refers to such pels does not conform to this part of ISO/IEC 11172.

D.6.2.2.3 2-D search strategy

There are many possible methods of searching another picture for the best match to a current block, and a few simple ones will be described.

The simplest search is a full search. Within the chosen search range all possible displacements are evaluated using the block matching criterion.

The full search is computationally expensive, and practical encoders may not be able to afford the time required for a full search.

A simple modification of the full search is to search using only integer pel displacements. Once the best integer match has been found, the eight neighbouring half-integer pel displacements are evaluated, and the best one selected as illustrated below:

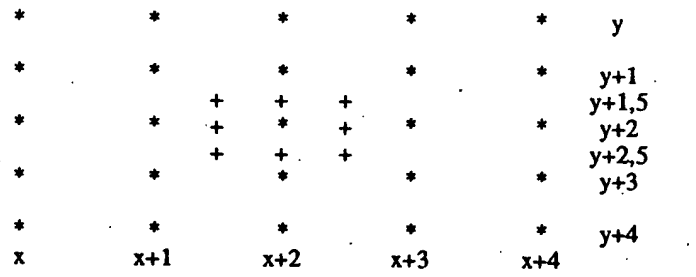


Figure D.25 -- Integer pel and half pel displacements

Assume that the position x+2,y+2 gives the best integer displacement matching using the selected block matching criterion, then the encoder would evaluate the eight positions with half pel displacements marked by + signs in figure D.25. If one of them were a better match then it would become the motion vector, otherwise the motion vector would remain that of the integer displacement x+2,y+2.

If during the integer pel search, two or more positions have the same block matching value, the encoder can adopt a consistent tie-breaking rule.

The modified full search algorithm is approximately an order of magnitude simpler than the full search. Using only integer displacements for the first stage of the search reduces the number of evaluations by a factor of four. In addition, the evaluations are simpler since the pel differences can be calculated directly and do not have to be interpolated.

For some applications even the modified full search may be too time consuming, and a faster search method may be required. One such method is the logarithmic search.

D.6.2.2.4 Logarithmic search

In this search method, grids of 9 displacements are examined, and the search continued based on a smaller grid centered on the position of the best match. If the grids are reduced in size by a factor of 3 at each step then the search is maximally efficient in the sense that any integer shift has a unique selection path to it. This method will find the best match only for a rather limited set of image types. A more robust method is to reduce the size of the grids by a smaller factor at each step, e.g. by a factor of 2. The scaling factors can also be adjusted to match the search ranges of table D.7.

The method will be illustrated with an example. Consider the set of integer shifts in figure D.26:

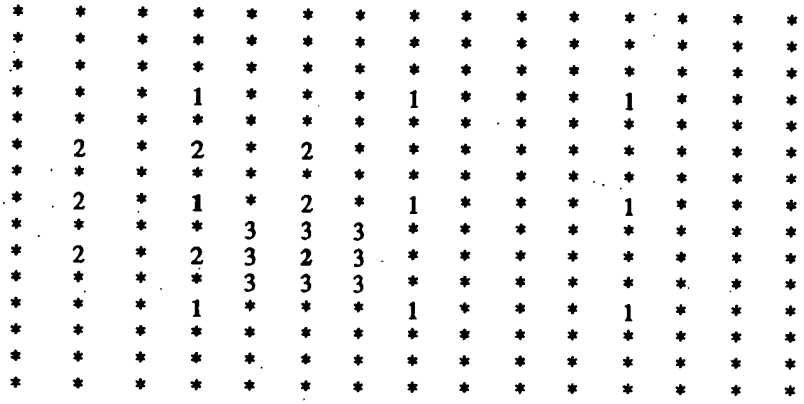


Figure D.26 -- Logarithmic search method for integer pel shifts

The first grid has a spacing of 4 pels. The first step examines pels at shifts of 0, 4, or -4 pels in each direction, marked 1 in figure D.26. The best position is used as the center point of the second grid. Assume it is the pel marked 1 directly to the left of the center pel. The second grid has a spacing of 2 pels. The second step examines pels at shifts of 0, 2, or -2 pels in each direction from the center of the new grid, marked 2 in the figure. The best position is used as the center point of the third grid, assume it is the lower right pel of the second grid. The third grid has a spacing of 1 pel. The third step examines pels at shifts of 0, 1, or -1 pels in each direction from the center of the grid. The best position is used as the center point of the fourth grid. The fourth grid has a spacing of 1/2 pel. The fourth step examines pels at shifts of 0, 1/2, or -1/2 pels in each direction from the center of the grid using the same method as in the modified full search. The best position determines the motion vector.

Some possible grid spacings for various search ranges are given in table D.8.

Table D.8 -- Grid spacings for logarithmic searches

forward_f_code	RANGE	STEPS	GRID SPACINGS
1	±7,5	4	4 2 1 1/2
2	±15,5	5	8 4 2 1 1/2
3	±31,5	6	16 8 4 2 1 1/2

For P-pictures only forward searches are performed, but B-pictures require both forward and backward searches. Not all the vectors calculated during the search are necessarily used. In B-pictures either forward or backward motion compensation might be used instead of interpolated motion compensation, and in both P and B-pictures the encoder might decide that a block is better coded as intra, in which case no vectors are transmitted.

D.6.2.2.5 Telescopic search

Even with the faster methods of the modified full search, or the logarithmic search, the search might be quite expensive. For example, if the encoder decides to use a maximum search range of 7 pels per picture

interval, and if there are 4 B-pictures preceding a P-picture, then the full search range for the P-picture would be 35 pels. This large search range may exceed the capabilities of the encoder.

One way of reducing the search range is to use a telescopic search technique. This is best explained by illustrating with an example. Consider the group of pictures in figure D.27.

I	B	B	B	P	B	B	B	P	B	B	B	P
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12

Figure D.27 -- Example group of pictures in display order

The encoder might proceed using its selected block matching criterion and D search strategy. For each P-picture and the preceding B-pictures, it first calculates all the forward vectors, then calculates all the backward vectors. The first set of pictures consists of pictures 0 through 4.

To calculate the complete set of forward vectors, the encoder first calculates all the forward vectors from picture 0 to picture 1 using a 2-D search strategy centered on zero displacement. It next calculates all the forward vectors from picture 0 to picture 2 using a 2-D search strategy centered on the displacements calculated for the corresponding block of picture 1. It next calculates all the forward vectors from picture 0 to picture 3 using a 2-D search strategy centered on the displacements calculated for the corresponding block of picture 2. Finally, it calculates all the forward vectors from picture 0 to picture 4 using a 2-D search strategy centered on the displacements calculated for the corresponding block of picture 3.

To calculate the complete set of backward vectors, the encoder first calculates all the backward vectors from picture 4 to picture 3 using a 2-D search strategy centered on zero displacement. It next calculates all the backward vectors from picture 4 to picture 2 using a 2-D search strategy centered on the displacements calculated for the corresponding block of picture 3. Finally, it calculates all the backward vectors from picture 4 to picture 1 using a 2-D search strategy centered on the displacements calculated for the corresponding block of picture 2.

Further methods of motion estimation are given by Netravali and Haskell [1].

D.6.2.3 Coding of motion vectors

The motion vector of a macroblock tends to be well correlated with the vector of the previous macroblock. For example, in a pan all vectors would be roughly the same. Motion vectors are coded using a DPCM technique to make use of this correlation.

In P-pictures the motion vector used for DPCM, the prediction vector, is set to zero at the start of each slice and at each intra-coded macroblock. Note that macroblocks which are coded as predictive but which have no motion vector, also set the prediction vector to zero.

In B-pictures there are two motion vectors, forward and backward. Each vector is coded relative to the predicted vector of the same type. Both motion vectors are set to zero at the start of each slice and at each intra-coded macroblock. Note that predictive macroblocks which have only a forward vector do not affect the value of the predicted backward vector. Similarly, predictive macroblocks which have only a backward vector do not affect the value of the predicted forward vector.

The range of the vectors is set by two parameters. The full_pel_forward_vector and full_pel_backward_vector flags in the picture header determine whether the vectors are defined in half-pel or integer-pel units.

A second parameter, forward_f_code or backward_f_code, is related to the number of bits appended to the VLC codes in table D.9.

Table D.9 -- Differential motion code.

VLC code	Value
0000 0011 001	-16
0000 0011 011	-15
0000 0011 101	-14
0000 0011 111	-13
0000 0100 001	-12
0000 0100 011	-11
0000 0100 11	-10
0000 0101 01	-9
0000 0101 11	-8
0000 0111	-7
0000 1001	-6
0000 1011	-5
0000 11	-4
0001 1	-3
0011	-2
011	-1
1	0
010	1
0010	2
0001 0	3
0000 110	4
0000 1010	5
0000 1000	6
0000 0110	7
0000 0101 10	8
0000 0101 00	9
0000 0100 10	10
0000 0100 010	11
0000 0100 000	12
0000 0011 110	13
0000 0011 100	14
0000 0011 010	15
0000 0011 000	16

Advantage is taken of the fact that the range of displacement vector values is constrained. Each VLC represents a pair of difference values. Only one of the pair will yield a motion vector falling within the permitted range.

The range of the vector is limited to the values shown in table D.7. The values obtained by decoding the differential values must be kept within this range by adding or subtracting a modulus which depends on the f value as shown in table D.10.

Table D.10 -- Modulus for motion vectors

forward_f_code or backward_f_code	MODULUS
1	32
2	64
3	128
4	256
5	512
6	1 024
7	2 048

The use of the modulus, which refers only to the numbers in tables D.8 through D.10, will be illustrated by an example. Assume that a slice has the following vectors, expressed in the units set by the full pel flag.

3 10 30 30 -14 -16 27 24

The range is such that an f value of 2 can be used. The initial prediction is zero, so the differential values are

3 7 20 0 -44 -2 43 -3

The differential values are reduced to the range -32 to +31 by adding or subtracting the modulus 64 corresponding to the forward_f_code of 2.

3 7 20 0 20 -2 -21 -3

To create the codeword, (mvd + (sign(mvd)*(forward_f-1))) is divided by forward_f. The signed quotient of this division is used to find a variable length codeword from table D.9. Then the absolute value of the remainder is used to generate a fixed length code that is concatenated with the variable length code. The codes generated by this example are shown below:

Value	VLC Code
3	0010 0
7	0000 1100
20	0000 0100 101
0	1
20	0000 0100 101
-2	0111
-21	0000 0100 0110
-3	0011 0

D.6.3 Coding I-pictures

In coding I-pictures, the encoder has two main decisions to make that are not mandated by this part of ISO/IEC 11172. These are: how to divide the picture up into slices, and how to set the quantizer scale.

D.6.3.1 Slices in I-pictures

Division of the picture into slices is described in D.5.4.

D.6.3.2 Macroblocks in I-pictures

D.6.3.2.1 Macroblock types in I-pictures

There are two types of macroblock in I-pictures. Both use intra coding. One uses the current quantizer scale, whereas the other defines a new value for the quantizer scale. They are identified in the coded bitstream by the VLC codes given in table D.11.

Table D.11 -- Macroblock type VLC for I-pictures (table B.2a.)

TYPE	QUANT	VLC
intra-d		1
intra-q	1	01

The types are referred to names in this annex. Intra-d is the default type where the quantizer scale is not changed. Intra-q sets the quantizer scale.

In order to allow for possible future extension to MPEG video, the VLC for intra-q is 01 rather than 0. Additional types could be added to this table without interfering with the existing entries. The VLC table is thus open for future additions, and not closed. A policy of making the coding tables open in this way was adopted by in developing this part of ISO/IEC 11172. The advantage of future extension was judged to be worth the slight coding inefficiency.

D.6.3.2.2 Quantizer scale

If the macroblock type is intra-q, then the macroblock header contains a five-bit integer which defines the quantizer scale. This is used by the decoder to calculate the DCT coefficients from the transmitted quantized coefficients. A value of 0 is forbidden, so the quantizer scale can have any value between 1 and 31 inclusive.

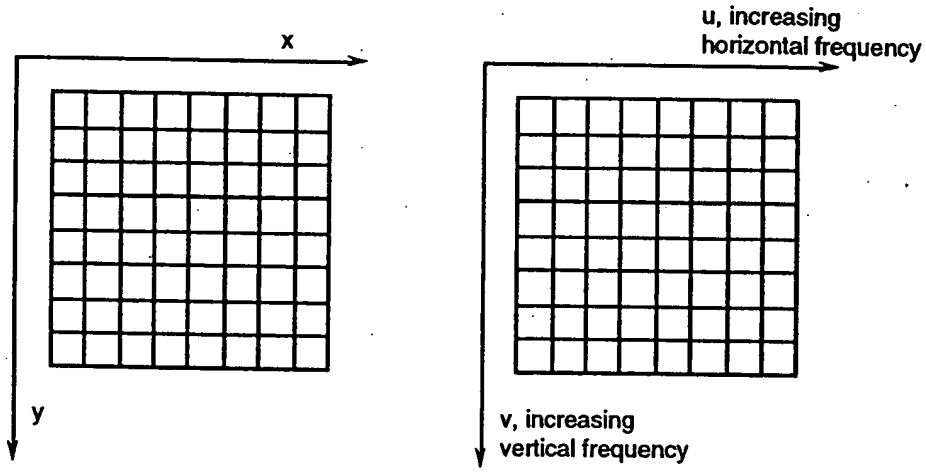
Note that also the quantizer scale is set in a slice header.

If the block type is intra-d, then no quantizer scale is transmitted and the decoder uses the previously set value. For a discussion on strategies encoders might use to set the quantizer scale, see D.6.1.

Note that the cost of transmitting a new quantizer scale is six bits: one for the extra length of the macroblock type code, and five to define the value. Although this is normally a small fraction of the bits allocated to coding each macroblock, the encoder should exercise some restraint and avoid making a large number of very small changes.

D.6.3.3 DCT transform

The DCT is illustrated in figure D.28.



(a) Pels (b) DCT Coefficients

Figure D.28 -- Transformation of pels to coefficients

The pels are shown in raster scan order, whereas the coefficients are arranged in frequency order. The top left coefficient is the dc term and is proportional to the average value of the component pel values. The other coefficients are called ac coefficients. The ac coefficients to the right of the dc coefficient represent increasing horizontal frequencies, whereas ac coefficients below the dc coefficient represent increasing vertical frequencies. The remaining ac coefficients contain both horizontal and vertical frequency components. Note that an image containing only vertical lines contains only horizontal frequencies.

The coefficient array contains all the information of the pel array and the pel array can be exactly reconstructed from the coefficient array, except for information lost by the use of finite arithmetic precision.

The two-dimensional DCT is defined as

$$F(u,v) = \frac{1}{4} \sum_{x=0}^{7} \sum_{y=0}^{7} f(x,y) \cos(\pi(2x+1)u/16) \cos(\pi(2y+1)v/16)$$

with: u, v, x, y = 0, 1, 2, ... 7
where x, y = spatial coordinates in the pel domain
u, v = coordinates in the transform domain
C(u) = $1/\sqrt{2}$ for u = 0
C(v) = $1/\sqrt{2}$ for v = 0
= 1 otherwise

This transform is separable, i.e. a one-dimensional DCT transform may be applied first in the horizontal direction and then in the vertical direction. The formula for the one dimensional transform is:

$$F(u) = \frac{1}{2} C(u) \sum_{x=0}^{7} f(x)\cos(\pi(2x+1)u/16)$$

$$C(u) = 1/\sqrt{2} \text{ for } u = 0$$
$$= 1 \text{ otherwise}$$

Fast DCT transforms exist, analogous to fast Fourier transforms. See reference [3].

The input pel values have a range from 0 to 255, giving a dynamic range for the dc coefficient from 0 to 2 040. The maximum dynamic range for any ac coefficient is about -1 000 to 1 000. Note that for P and B-pictures the component pels represent difference values and range from -255 to 255. This gives a maximum dynamic range for any coefficient of about -2 000 to 2 000. The encoder may thus represent the coefficients using 12 bits whose values range from -2 048 to 2 047.

D.6.3.4 Quantization

Each array of 8 by 8 coefficients produced by the DCT transform operation is quantized to produce an 8 by 8 array of quantized coefficients. Normally the number of non-zero quantized coefficients is quite small, and this is one of the main reasons why the compression scheme works as well as it does.

The coefficients are quantized with a uniform quantizer. The characteristic of this quantizer, only for I-blocks, is shown below:

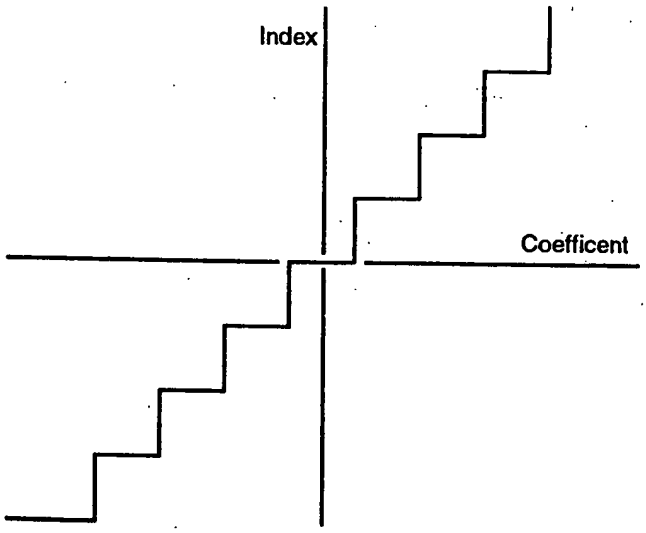


Figure D.29. -- Uniform quantizer characteristics

The value of the coefficient is divided by the quantizer step size and rounded to the nearest whole number to produce the quantized coefficient. Half integer values may be rounded up or down without directly affecting image quality. However, rounding towards zero tends to give the smallest code size and so is preferred. For example, with a step size of 16 all coefficients with values between 25 and 40 inclusive would give a quantized coefficient of 2.

The quantizer step size is derived from the quantization matrix and the quantizer scale. It can thus be different for different coefficients, and may change between macroblocks. The only exception is the dc coefficient which is treated differently.

The eye is quite sensitive to large area luminance errors, and so the accuracy of coding the dc value is fixed. The quantizer step size for the dc coefficients of the luminance and chrominance components is fixed at eight. The dc quantized coefficient is obtained by dividing the dc coefficient by eight and rounding to the nearest whole number. This effectively quantizes the average dc value to one part in 256 for the reconstructed pels.

For example, a dc coefficient of 21 is quantized to a value of 3, independent of the value of the quantizer scale.

The ac coefficients are quantized using the intra quantization matrix. The quantized coefficient i[u,v] is produced by quantizing the coefficient c[u,v] for I-blocks. One equation is given by the formula:

$$i[u,v] = 8 * c[u,v] \;//\; (q * m[u,v])$$

where m[u,v] is the corresponding element of the intra quantization matrix, and q is the quantizer scale. The quantized coefficient is limited to the range -255 to +255.

The intra quantization matrix might be the default matrix, or it might have been downloaded in the sequence header.

D.6.3.5 Coding of quantized coefficients

The top left coefficient in figure D.28b is called the dc coefficient, the remainder are called ac coefficients. The dc coefficient is correlated with the dc coefficient of the preceding block, and advantage is taken of this in coding. The ac coefficients are not well correlated, and are coded independently.

After the dc coefficient of a block has been quantized it is coded losslessly by a DPCM technique. Coding of the luminance blocks within a macroblock follows the raster scan order of figure D.5, 0 to 3. Thus the dc value of block 3 becomes the dc predictor for block 0 of the following macroblock. The dc value of each chrominance block is coded using the dc value of the corresponding block of the previous macroblock as a predictor. At the beginning of each slice, all three dc predictors for Y, Cb and Cr, are set to 1 024 (128*8).

The differential dc values thus generated are categorized according to their absolute value as shown in table D.12.

Table D.12. -- Differential dc size and VLC

DIFFERENTIAL DC (absolute value)	SIZE	VLC CODE (luminance)	VLC CODE (chrominance)
0	0	100	00
1	1	00	01
2 to 3	2	01	10
4 to 7	3	101	110
8 to 15	4	110	1110
16 to 31	5	1110	1111 0
32 to 63	6	1111 0	1111 10
64 to 127	7	1111 10	1111 110
128 to 255	8	1111 110	1111 1110

The size is transmitted using a VLC. This VLC is different for luminance and chrominance since the statistics are different.

The size defines the number of additional bits required to define the level uniquely. Thus a size of 6 is followed by 6 additional bits. These bits define the level in order, from low to high. Thus the first of these extra bits gives the sign: 0 for negative and 1 for positive. A size of zero requires no additional bits.

The additional codes are given in table D.13.

Table D.13. -- Differential dc additional code

DIFFERENTIAL DC	SIZE	ADDITIONAL CODE
-255 to -128	8	00000000 to 01111111
-127 to -64	7	0000000 to 0111111
-63 to -32	6	000000 to 011111
-31 to -16	5	00000 to 01111
-15 to -8	4	0000 to 0111
-7 to -4	3	000 to 011
3 to -2	2	00 to 01
-1	1	0
0	0	
1	1	1
2 to 3	2	10 to 11
4 to 7	3	100 to 111
8 to 15	4	1000 to 1111
16 to 31	5	10000 to 11111
32 to 63	6	100000 to 111111
64 to 127	7	1000000 to 1111111
128 to 255	8	10000000 to 11111111

For example, a luminance dc change of 10 would be coded as 1101010. table D.12 shows that the first three bits 110 indicate that the size is 4. This means that four additional bits are required to define the exact value. The next bit is a 1, and table D.13 shows that the differential dc value must be somewhere between 8 and 15 inclusive. The last three bits, 010, show that the exact value is 10.

The decoder reconstructs dc quantized coefficients by following the inverse procedure.

The ac quantized coefficients are coded using a run length and level technique. The quantized coefficients are first scanned in the zigzag order shown in figure D.30.

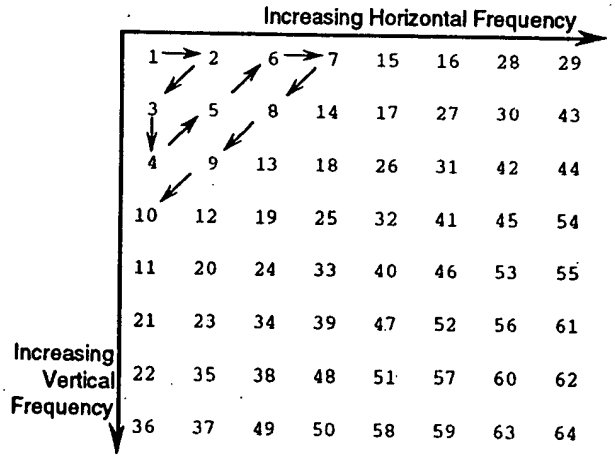


Figure D.30. -- Quantized coefficient block in zigzag scan order

The scanning order starts at 1, passes through 2, 3 etc in order, eventually reaching 64 in the bottom right corner. The length of a run is the number of zero quantized coefficients skipped over. For example, the quantized coefficients in figure D.31 produce the list of run lengths and levels in table D.14.

1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	-3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	-5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	130	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure D.31. -- Example quantized coefficients

Table D.14. -- Example run lengths and levels

RUN-LENGTH	LEVEL
1	2
0	4
0	-3
3	-5
0	1
14	130
end	

The scan starts at position 2 since the top left quantized coefficient is coded separately as the dc quantized coefficient.

Using a zig zag scan rather than a raster scan is more efficient as it gives fewer runs and can be coded with shorter VLC codes.

The list of run lengths and levels is coded using table D.15 Not all possible combinations of run length and level are in these tables, only the more common ones. For combinations not in the tables, an escape sequence is used. In table D.15, the last bit 's' denotes the sign of the level; 0 means a positive level and 1 means a negative level. The escape code is used followed by the run length derived from table D.16 and then the level from table D.17.

Table D.15. -- Combination codes for DCT quantized coefficients. s = 0 for positive level, s = 1 for negative level

RUN	LEVEL	VLC CODE
EOB		10
0	1	1s IF 1st COEFF
0	1	11s NOT 1st COEFF
0	2	0100 s
0	3	0010 1s
0	4	0000 110s
0	5	0010 0110 s
0	6	0010 0001 s
0	7	0000 0010 10s
0	8	0000 0001 1101 s
0	9	0000 0001 1000 s
0	10	0000 0001 0011 s
0	11	0000 0001 0000 s
0	12	0000 0000 1101 0s
0	13	0000 0000 1100 1s
0	14	0000 0000 1100 0s
0	15	0000 0000 1011 1s
0	16	0000 0000 0111 11s
0	17	0000 0000 0111 10s
0	18	0000 0000 0111 01s
0	19	0000 0000 0111 00s
0	20	0000 0000 0110 11s
0	21	0000 0000 0110 10s
0	22	0000 0000 0110 01s
0	23	0000 0000 0110 00s
0	24	0000 0000 0101 11s
0	25	0000 0000 0101 10s
0	26	0000 0000 0101 01s
0	27	0000 0000 0101 00s
0	28	0000 0000 0100 11s
0	29	0000 0000 0100 10s
0	30	0000 0000 0100 01s
0	31	0000 0000 0100 00s
0	32	0000 0000 0011 000s
0	33	0000 0000 0010 111s
0	34	0000 0000 0010 110s
0	35	0000 0000 0010 101s
0	36	0000 0000 0010 100s
0	37	0000 0000 0010 011s
0	38	0000 0000 0010 010s
0	39	0000 0000 0010 001s
0	40	0000 0000 0010 000s
1	1	011s
1	2	0001 10s
1	3	0010 0101 s
1	4	0000 0011 00s
1	5	0000 0001 1011 s
1	6	0000 0000 1011 0s
1	7	0000 0000 1010 1s
1	8	0000 0000 0011 111s
1	9	0000 0000 0011 110s
1	10	0000 0000 0011 101s
1	11	0000 0000 0011 100s
1	12	0000 0000 0011 011s
1	13	0000 0000 0011 010s
1	14	0000 0000 0011 001s
1	15	0000 0000 0001 0011s
1	16	0000 0000 0001 0010s
1	17	0000 0000 0001 0001s
1	18	0000 0000 0001 0000s

RUN	LEVEL	VLC CODE
2	1	0101 s
2	2	0000 100s
2	3	0000 0010 11s
2	4	0000 0001 0100 s
2	5	0000 0000 1010 0s
3	1	0011 1s
3	2	0010 0100 s
3	3	0000 0001 1100 s
3	4	0000 0000 1001 1s
4	1	0011 0s
4	2	0000 0011 11s
4	3	0000 0001 0010 s
5	1	0001 11s
5	2	0000 0010 01s
5	3	0000 0000 1001 0s
6	1	0001 01s
6	2	0000 0001 1110 s
6	3	0000 0000 0001 0100s
7	1	0001 00s
7	2	0000 0001 0101 s
8	1	0000 111s
8	2	0000 0001 0001 s
9	1	0000 101s
9	2	0000 0000 1000 1s
10	1	0010 0111 s
10	2	0000 0000 1000 0s
11	1	0010 0011 s
11	2	0000 0000 0001 1010s
12	1	0010 0010 s
12	2	0000 0000 0001 1001s
13	1	0010 0000 s
13	2	0000 0000 0001 1000s
14	1	0000 0011 10s
14	2	0000 0000 0001 0111s
15	1	0000 0011 01s
15	2	0000 0000 0001 0110s
16	1	0000 0010 00s
16	2	000 0000 0001 0101s
17	1	0000 0001 1111 s
18	1	0000 0001 1010 s
19	1	0000 0001 1001 s
20	1	0000 0001 0111 s
21	1	0000 0001 0110 s
22	1	0000 0000 1111 1s
23	1	0000 0000 1111 0s
24	1	0000 0000 1110 1s
25	1	0000 0000 1110 0s
26	1	0000 0000 1101 1s
27	1	0000 0000 0001 1111s
28	1	0000 0000 0001 1110s
29	1	0000 0000 0001 1101s
30	1	0000 0000 0001 1100s
31	1	0000 0000 0001 1011s
ESCAPE		0000 01

Table D.16. -- Zero run length codes

RUN-LENGTH	CODE
0	0000 00
1	0000 01
2	0000 10
.	.
62	1111 10
63	1111 11

Table D.17. -- Level codes for DCT quantized coefficients

LEVEL	CODE
-256	FORBIDDEN
-255	1000 0000 0000 0001
-254	1000 0000 0000 0010
.	.
-129	1000 0000 0111 1111
-128	1000 0000 1000 0000
-127	1000 0001
-126	1000 0010
.	.
-2	1111 1110
-1	1111 1111
0	FORBIDDEN
1	0000 0001
2	0000 0010
.	.
126	0111 1110
127	0111 1111
128	0000 0000 1000 0000
129	0000 0000 1000 0001
.	.
254	0000 0000 1111 1110
255	0000 0000 1111 1111

Using tables D.15 through D.17 we can derive the VLC codes for the example of table D.14:

Table D.18. -- Example run lengths, values, and VLC codes

RUN	VALUE	VLC CODE	COMMENT
1	2	0001 100	
0	4	0000 1100	
0	-3	0010 11	
3	-5	0000 0100 0011 1111 1011	esc seq
0	1	110	
14	130	0000 0100 1110 0000 0000 1000 0010	esc seq
EOB		10	

The first three codes in table D.18 are derived directly from table D.15. The next code is derived indirectly since table D.15 does not contain an entry corresponding to a run length of 3 and a level of 5. Instead the escape code 000001 is used. This is followed by the six-bit code 000011 from table D.16 indicating a run length of 3. Lastly the eight-bit code from table D.17 (11111011 - indicating a level of -5) is appended.

After the last coefficient has been coded, an EOB code is used to inform the decoder that there are no more quantized coefficients in the current 8 by 8 block. This EOB code is used even if the last quantized coefficient is at the bottom right of the block.

There are two codes for the 0,1 run length, level combination, as indicated in table D.15. Intra block coding always has the first quantized coefficient, the dc quantized coefficient, coded using the dc size method. Consequently intra blocks always use the code 11s to denote a run length, level combination of 0,1. It will

be seen later that predictively coded blocks code the dc quantized coefficient differently, and may use the shorter code.

D.6.4 Coding P-pictures

As in I-pictures, each P-picture is divided up into one or more slices, which are, in turn, divided into macroblocks. Coding is more complex than for I-pictures, since motion-compensated macroblocks may be constructed. The difference between the motion compensated macroblock and the current macroblock is transformed with a two-dimensional DCT giving an array of 8 by 8 transform coefficients. The coefficients are quantized to produce a set of quantized coefficients. The quantized coefficients are then encoded using a run-length value technique.

As in I-pictures, the encoder needs to store the decoded P-picture since this may be used as the starting point for motion compensation. Therefore, the encoder will reconstruct the image from the quantized coefficients.

In coding P-pictures, the encoder has more decisions to make than in the case of I-pictures. These decisions are: how to divide the picture up into slices, determine the best motion vectors to use, decide whether to code each macroblock as intra or predicted, and how to set the quantizer scale.

D.6.4.1 Slices in P-pictures

P-pictures are divided into slices in the same way as I-pictures. The same considerations as to the best method of dividing a picture into slices apply, see D.5.4.

D.6.4.2 Macroblocks in P-pictures

Slices are divided into macroblocks in the same way as for I-pictures. The major difference is the complexity introduced by motion compensation.

The macroblock header may contain stuffing. The position of the macroblock is determined by the macroblock address. Whereas the macroblock address increment within a slice for I-pictures is restricted to one, it may be larger for P-pictures. Any macroblocks thus skipped over are called "skipped macroblocks". The decoder copies them from the previous picture into the current picture. Skipped macroblocks are as predicted macroblocks with a zero motion vector for which no additional correction is available. They require very few bits to transmit.

The next field in the macroblock header defines the macroblock type.

D.6.4.2.1 Macroblock types in P-pictures

There are eight types of macroblock in P-pictures:

Table D.19 -- Macroblock type VLC for P-pictures (table B.2b)

TYPE	VLC	INTRA	MOTION FORWARD	CODED PATTERN	QUANT
pred-mc	1	0	1	1	0
pred-c	01	0	0	1	0
pred-m	001	0	1	0	0
intra-d	0001 1	1	0	0	0
pred-mcq	0001 0	0	1	1	1
pred-cq	0000 1	0	0	1	1
intra-q	0000 01	1	0	0	1
skipped	N/A				

Not all possible combinations of motion compensation, coding, quantization, and intra coding occur. For example, with intracoded macroblocks, intra-d and intra-q, motion vectors are not transmitted.

Skipped macroblocks have no VLC code. Instead they are coded by having the macroblock address increment code skip over them.

D.6.4.2.2 Quantizer scale

If the macroblock type is pred-mcq, pred-cq or intra-q, i.e. if the QUANT column in table D.19 has a 1, then a quantizer scale is transmitted . If the macroblock types are pred-mc, pred-c or intra-d, then the DCT correction is coded using the previously established value for the quantizer scale.

D.6.4.2.3 Motion vectors

If the macroblock type is pred-m, pred-mc or pred-mq, i.e. if the MOTION FORWARD column in table D.19 has a 1, then horizontal and vertical forward motion vectors are transmitted in succession..

D.6.4.2.4 Coded block pattern

If the macroblock type is pred-c, pred-mc, pred-cq or pred-mcq, i.e. if the CODED PATTERN column in table D.19 has a 1, then a coded block pattern is transmitted. This informs the decoder which of the six blocks in the macroblock are coded, i.e. have transmitted DCT quantized coefficients, and which are not coded, i.e. have no additional correction after motion compensation.

The coded block pattern is a number from 0 to 63 that indicates which of the blocks are coded, i.e. have at least one transmitted coefficient, and which are not coded. To understand the structure of the coded block pattern, we refer to figure D.5 and introduce the variables PN to indicate the status of each of the six blocks. If block N is coded then PN has the value one, if it is not coded then PN is zero. The coded block pattern is defined by the equation:

$$CBP = 32*P0 + 16*P1 + 8*P2 + 4*P3 + 2*P4 + P5$$

This is equivalent to the definition given in 2.4.3.6.

For example, if the top two luminance blocks and the Cb block are coded, and the other three are not, then P0 = 1, P1 = 1, P2 = 0, P3 = 0, P4 = 1, and P5 = 0. The coded block pattern is:

$$CBP = 32*1 + 16*1 + 8*0 + 4*0 + 2*1 + 0 = 50$$

Certain patterns are more common than others. Advantage is taken of this fact to increase the coding efficiency and transmit a VLC representing the coded block pattern, rather than the coded block pattern itself. The VLC codes are given in table D.20.

Table D.20 -- VLC table for coded block pattern

CBP	VLC CODE
60	111
4	1101
8	1100
16	1011
32	1010
12	1001 1
48	1001 0
20	1000 1
40	1000 0
28	0111 1
44	0111 0
52	0110 1
56	0110 0
1	0101 1
61	0101 0
2	0100 1
62	0100 0
24	0011 11
36	0011 10
3	0011 01
63	0011 00

CBP	VLC CODE
5	0010 111
9	0010 110
17	0010 101
33	0010 100
6	0010 011
10	0010 010
18	0010 001
34	0010 000
7	0001 1111
11	0001 1110
19	0001 1101
35	0001 1100
13	0001 1011
49	0001 1010
21	0001 1001
41	0001 1000
14	0001 0111
50	0001 0110
22	0001 0101
42	0001 0100
15	0001 0011

CBP	VLC CODE
51	0001 0010
23	0001 0001
43	0001 0000
25	0000 1111
37	0000 1110
26	0000 1101
38	0000 1100
29	0000 1011
45	0000 1010
53	0000 1001
57	0000 1000
30	0000 0111
46	0000 0110
54	0000 0101
58	0000 0100
31	0000 0011 1
47	0000 0011 0
55	0000 0010 1
59	0000 0010 0
27	0000 0001 1
39	0000 0001 0

Thus the coded block pattern of the previous example, 50, would be represented by the code "00010110".

Note that there is no code representing the state in which none of the blocks are coded, a coded block pattern equal to zero. Instead, this state is indicated by the macroblock type.

For macroblocks in I-pictures, and for intra coded macroblocks in P and B-pictures, the coded block pattern is not transmitted, but is assumed to have a value of 63, i.e. all the blocks in the macroblock are coded.

The use of coded block patterns instead of transmitting end of block codes for all blocks follows the practice in CCITT Recommendation H.261.

D.6.4.3 Selection of macroblock type

An encoder has the difficult task of choosing between the different types of macroblocks.

An exhaustive method is to try coding a macroblock to the same degree of accuracy using each type, then choose the type that requires the least number of coding bits.

A simpler method, and one that is computationally less expensive, is to make a series of decisions. One way to order these decisions is:

1: motion compensation or no motion compensation, i.e. is a motion vector transmitted or is it assumed to be zero.
2: intra or non intra coding, i.e. is the macroblock type intra or is it predicted using the motion vector found in step 1.
3: if the macroblock type is non-intra, is it coded or not coded, i.e. is the residual error large enough to be coded using the DCT transform.
4: decide if the quantizer scale is satisfactory or should be changed.

These decisions are summarized in figure D.32.

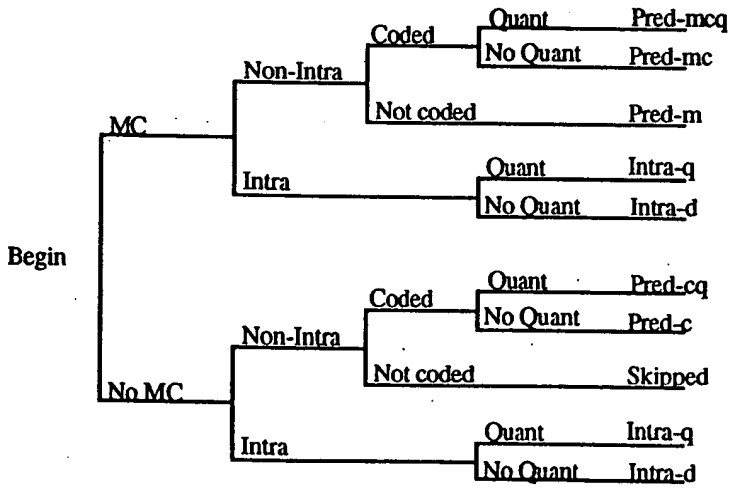


Figure D.32 -- Selection of macroblock types in P-pictures

The four decision steps are discussed in the next four clauses.

D.6.4.3.1 Motion compensation decision

The encoder has an option whether to transmit motion vectors or not for predictive-coded macroblocks. If the motion vector is zero then some code may be saved by not transmitting the motion vectors. Thus one algorithm is to search for the best match and compare the error of the predicted block with that formed with a zero vector. If the motion-compensated block is only slightly better than the uncompensated block, using the selected block matching criterion, then the zero vector might be used to save coding bits.

An algorithm used in the development of both CCITT Recommendation H.261 and this part of ISO/IEC 11172 was as follows.

The block-matching criterion is the sum of absolute differences of all the luminance pels in a macroblock, when compared with the motion-compensated macroblock. If the sum is M for the motion-compensated block, and Z for the zero vector, then the decision of whether to make use of the motion vector is defined by figure D.33.

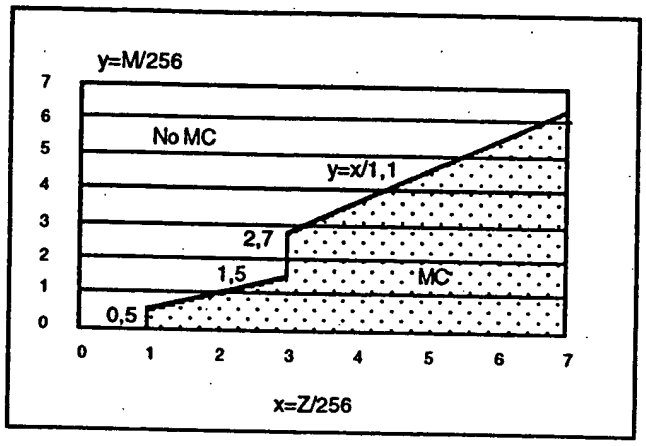


Figure D.33 -- Characteristic MC/No MC

Points on the line dividing the No MC (no motion compensation, i.e. zero vector), from the MC (motion compensation) regions, are regarded as belonging to the no motion compensation region.

It can be seen that if the error is sufficiently low, then no motion compensation should be used. Thus a way to speed up the decision is to examine the zero vector first and decide if it is good enough.

The foregoing algorithm was designed for telecommunications sequences in which the camera was fixed, and in which any movement of the background caused by the "drag along effect" of nearby moving objects was very objectionable. Great care was taken to reduce this spurious motion, and this accounts for the curious shape of the boundary between the two regions in figure D.33.

D.6.4.3.2 Intra/non-intra coding decision

After the encoder has determined the best motion vector, it is in a position to decide whether to use it, or disregard it entirely and code the macroblock as intra. The obvious way to do this is to code the block as intra, and compare the total number of bits required when coded as motion compensated plus correction with the same quantizer scale. The method using the fewest bits may be used.

This may be too computationally expensive for the encoder to do, and a faster algorithm may be required. One such algorithm, used in the simulation model during the development of this part of ISO/IEC 11172, was based on the variance of the luminance component of the macroblock. The variance of the current macroblock and of the difference macroblock (current - motion-compensated previous) is compared. It is calculated using the method represented by the following C program fragment. Note that in calculating the variance of the difference macroblock, the average value is assumed to be zero.

```
int pelp[16][16];        /* Pel values in the Previous macroblock after motion compensation */
int pelc[16][16];        /* Pel values in the Current macroblock */
long dif;                /* Difference between two pel values */
long sum;                /* Sum of the current pel values */
long vard;               /*  Variance of the Difference macroblock */
long varc;               /*Variance of the Current macroblock */
int x,y;                 /* coordinates */

sum = 0;
vard = 0;
varc = 0;
for (y=0;y<16;y++) {
        for (x=0;x<16;x++) {
                sum = sum + pelc[y][x];
                varc = varc + (pelc[y][x]*pelc[y][x]);

                dif = pelc[y][x] - pelp[y][x];
                vard = vard + (dif*dif);
        }
}
vard = vard/256;    /* assumes mean is close to zero */
varc = ( varc/256 ) - ( (sum/256)*(sum/256) );
```

The decision as to whether to code as intra or non intra is then based on figure D.34.

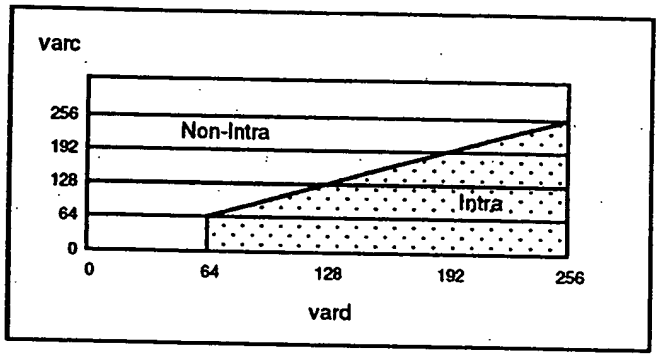


Figure D.34 -- Characteristic intra/non-intra

Points on the line dividing the non-intra from the intra regions, are regarded as belonging to the non-intra region.

D.6.4.3.3 Coded/not coded decision

The choice of coded or not coded is a result of quantization; when all coefficients are zero then a block is not coded. A macroblock is not coded if no block in it is coded, else it is coded.

D.6.4.3.4 Quantizer/no quantizer decision

Generally the quantizer scale is changed based on local scene content to improve the picture quality, and on the buffer fullness of the model decoder to prevent overflow and underflow.

D.6.4.4 DCT transform

Coefficients of intra blocks are transformed into quantized coefficients in the same way that they were for intra blocks in I-pictures. Prediction of the dc coefficient differs, however. The dc predicted values are all set to 1 024 (128*8) for intra blocks in P and B-pictures, unless the previous block was intra coded.

Coefficients of non-intra blocks are coded in a similar way. The main difference is that the coefficients to be transformed represent differences between pel values rather than the pel values themselves. The differences are obtained by subtracting the motion-compensated pel values from the previous picture from

the pel values in the current macroblock. Since the coding is of differences, there is no spatial prediction of the dc term.

D.6.4.5 Quantization of P-pictures

Intra macroblocks in P and B-pictures are quantized using the same method as described for I-pictures.

Non-intra macroblocks in P and B-pictures are quantized using the quantizer scale and the non-intra quantization matrix. Both dc and the ac coefficients are quantized the same way.

The following quantization formula was derived by inverting the reconstruction formula given in 2.4.4.2. Note that the divisor indicates truncation towards zero.

```
int coefforig;      /* original coefficient */
int coeffqant;      /* quantized coefficient */
int coeffrec;       * reconstructed coefficient */
int niqmatrix;      /* non-intra quantization matrix */
int quantscale;     /* quantizer scale */

coeffqant = (8 * coefforig) / (quantscale * niqmatrix);
```

The process is illustrated below:

niqmatrix	16	16	16	16	16
quantscale	10	10	10	10	10
coefforig	-39~-20	-19~19	20~39	40~59	60~79
coeffqant	-1	0	1	2	3
coeffrec	-29	0	29	49	69

The last line shows the reconstructed coefficient values. The following diagram shows the characteristics of this quantizer. The flat spot around zero gives this type of quantizer its name: a dead-zone quantizer.

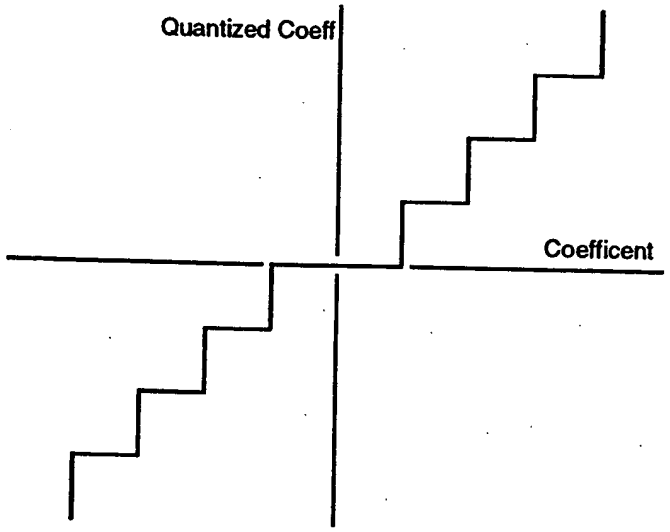


Figure D.35 -- Dead zone quantizer characteristic

D.6.4.6 Coding of quantized coefficients

D.6.4.6.1 Coding of intra blocks

Intra blocks in P-pictures are coded the same way as intra blocks in I-pictures. The only difference lies in the prediction of the dc coefficient. The dc predicted value is 128, unless the previous block was intra coded.

D.6.4.6.2 Coding of non-intra blocks

The coded block pattern is transmitted indicating which blocks have coefficient data. These are coded in a similar way to the coding of intra blocks except that the dc coefficient is coded in the same way as the ac coefficients.

D.6.5 Coding B-pictures

As in I and P-pictures, each B-picture is divided up into one or more slices, which are, in turn, divided into macroblocks. Coding is more complex than for P-pictures, since several types of motion compensated macroblock may be constructed: forward, backward, and interpolated. The difference between the motion-compensated macroblock and the current macroblock is transformed with a two-dimensional DCT giving an array of 8 by 8 transform coefficients. The coefficients are quantized to produce a set of quantized coefficients. The quantized coefficients are then encoded using a run-length value technique.

The encoder does not need to store the decoded B-pictures since they will not be used for motion compensation.

In coding B-pictures, the encoder has more decisions to make than in the case of P-pictures. These decisions are: how to divide the picture up into slices, determine the best motion vectors to use, decide whether to use forward or backward or interpolated motion compensation or to code as intra, and how to set the quantizer scale.

D.6.5.1 Slices in B-pictures

B-pictures are divided into slices in the same way as I and P-pictures. Since B-pictures are not used as a reference for motion compensation, errors in B-pictures are slightly less important than in I or P-pictures. Consequently, it might be appropriate to use fewer slices for B-pictures.

D.6.5.2 Macroblocks in B-pictures

Slices are divided into macroblocks in the same way as for I-pictures.

The macroblock header may contain stuffing. The position of the macroblock is determined by the macroblock address. Whereas the macroblock address increment within a slice for I-pictures is restricted to one, it may be larger for B-pictures. Any macroblocks thus skipped over are called "skipped macroblocks". Skipped macroblocks in B-pictures differ from skipped macroblocks in P-pictures. Whereas in P-pictures skipped macroblocks have a motion vector equal to zero, in B-pictures skipped macroblocks have the same motion vector and the same macroblock type as the previous macroblock, which cannot be intra coded. As there is no additional DCT correction, they require very few bits to transmit.

The next field in the macroblock header defines the macroblock type.

D.6.5.2.1 Macroblock types in B-pictures

There are 12 types of macroblock in B-pictures:

Table D.21 -- Macroblock type VLC for B-pictures (table B.2d)

TYPE	VLC	INTRA	MOTION FORWARD	MOTION BACKWARD	CODED PATTERN	QUANT
pred-i	10	0	1	1	0	0
pred-ic	11	0	1	1	1	0
pred-b	010	0	0	1	0	0
pred-bc	011	0	0	1	1	0
pred-f	0010	0	1	0	0	0
pred-fc	0011	0	1	0	1	0
intra-d	0001 1	1	0	0	0	0
pred-icq	0001 0	0	1	1	1	1
pred-fcq	0000 11	0	1	0	1	1
pred-bcq	0000 10	0	0	1	1	1
intra-q	0000 01	1	0	0	0	1
skipped	N/A					

Compared with P-pictures, there are extra types due to the introduction of the backward motion vector. If only a forward motion vector is present, then the motion compensated-macroblock is constructed from a previous picture, as in P-pictures. If only a backward motion vector is present, then the motion-compensated macroblock is constructed from a future picture. If both forward and backward motion vectors are present, then motion-compensated macroblocks are constructed from both previous and future pictures, and the result is averaged to form the "interpolated" motion-compensated macroblock.

D.6.5.2.2 Quantizer scale

If the macroblock type is pred-icq, pred-fcq, pred-bcq, or intra-q, i.e. if the QUANT column in table D.21 has a 1, then a quantizer scale is transmitted. For the remaining macroblock types, the DCT correction is coded using the previously established value for the quantizer scale.

D.6.5.2.3 Motion vectors

If the MOTION FORWARD column in table D.21 has a 1, then horizontal and vertical forward motion vectors are transmitted in succession. If the MOTION BACKWARD column in table D.21 has a 1, then horizontal and vertical backward motion vectors are transmitted in succession. If both types are present then four component vectors are transmitted in the following order:

horizontal forward
vertical forward
horizontal backward
vertical backward

D.6.5.2.4 Coded block pattern

If the CODED PATTERN column in table D.21 has a 1, then a coded block pattern is transmitted. This informs the decoder which of the six blocks in the macroblock are coded, i.e. have transmitted DCT quantized coefficients, and which are not coded, i.e. have no additional correction after motion compensation.

D.6.5.3 Selection of macroblock type

The encoder has more types of macroblock to choose from in B-pictures, than in P-pictures, and consequently its job is a little harder.

For the simulation model used during development of this part of ISO/IEC 11172, the following sequential decision algorithm was used:

1: motion compensation mode, i.e. is forward or backward or interpolative motion compensation best? What of the vector values?

2: intra or non intra coding, i.e. is the macroblock type intra or is it motion compensated using mode and the vectors found in step 1?

3: if the macroblock type is non-intra, is it coded or not coded, i.e. is the residual error large enough to be coded using the DCT transform.

4: decide if the quantizer scale is satisfactory or should be changed.

These decisions are summarized in the following diagram:

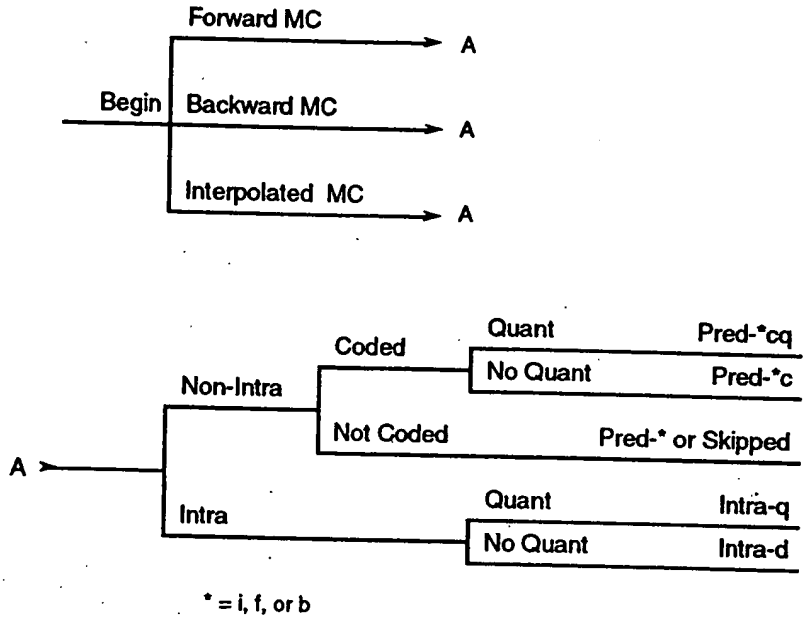


Figure D.36 -- Selection of macroblock type in B-pictures

The four decision steps are discussed in the next four clauses.

D.6.5.3.1 Selecting motion-compensation mode

An encoder should attempt to code B-pictures using skipped macroblocks if possible. This suggests that the encoder should first examine the case where the motion compensation is the same as for the previous macroblock. If the previous macroblock was non-intra, and if the motion-compensated block is good enough, there will be no additional DCT correction required and the block can be coded as skipped.

If the macroblock cannot be coded as skipped, then the following procedure may be followed.

For the simulation model, the selection of a motion compensation mode for a macroblock was based on the minimization of a cost function. The cost function was the MSE of the luminance difference between the motion-compensated macroblock and the current macroblock. The encoder calculated the best motion-compensated macroblock for forward motion compensation. It then calculated the best motion-compensated macroblock for backward motion compensation by a similar method. Finally it averaged the two motion-compensated macroblocks to produce the interpolated macroblock. It then selected the one that had the smallest mean square difference between it and the current macroblock. In the event of a tie, interpolative mode was chosen.

D.6.5.3.2 Intra/non-intra coding decision

Based on the smallest MSE, a decision is made between the best of the three possible prediction modes and the Intra mode. The calculation is similar to that of P-pictures. The variances of the difference macroblock, vard, and of the current macroblock, varc, are calculated.

In the simulation model the final decision was based on simply the macroblock type with the smallest variance. If the two variances were equal, non-intra coding was chosen.

D.6.5.3.3 Coded/not-coded decision

The choice of coded or not coded is a result of quantization, when all coefficients are zero then a block is not coded. A macroblock is not coded if no block in it is coded, else it is coded.

D.6.5.4 DCT transform

Coefficients of blocks are transformed into quantized coefficients in the same way that they are for blocks in P-pictures.

D.6.5.5 Quantization of B-pictures

Blocks in B-pictures are quantized in the same way as for P-pictures.

D.6.5.6 Coding quantized coefficients

Blocks in B-pictures are coded the same way as blocks in P-pictures.

D.6.6 Coding D-pictures

D pictures contain only low frequency information. They are intended to be used for fast visible search modes. It is intended that the low frequency information they contain is sufficient for the user to locate the desired video.

D pictures are coded as the dc coefficients of blocks. There is a bit transmitted for the macroblock type, although only one macroblock type exists. In addition there is a bit denoting end of macroblock.

D.6.7 Coding at lower picture rates

This part of ISO/IEC 11172 does not allow pictures to be dropped at the encoder. This differs from the case of CCITT Recommendation H.261 [5] where temporal sub-sampling may be done by omitting coded pictures from the sequence. This part of ISO/IEC 11172 requires that all source pictures must be encoded and that coded pictures must be inserted into the bitstream nominally at the rate defined by the **picture_rate** field in the sequence header.

Despite this requirement it is possible for encoders to operate at a lower effective picture rate than the one defined in the sequence header by using P-pictures or B-pictures that consist entirely of macroblocks that are copied from a neighbouring reference picture with no DCT information. This creates a flexible method of temporal sub-sampling and picture repetition that may be implemented in the encoder by inserting a defined block of data. For example, to encode at an effective rate of 12,5 Hz in a 25 Hz bitstream, alternate pictures can be copied from the preceding picture by inserting the block of data in table D.22.

Table D.22 -- Example of the coded data elements needed to generate repeated pictures

Value (bits)	Mnemonic	Length (bits)
0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 0000 0000	picture_start_code	32 bits
xxxx xxxx xx	temporal_reference	10 bits
010	picture_coding_type	3 bits
xxxx xxxx xxxx xxxx	vbv_delay	16 bits
0	full_pel_forward_code	1 bit
001	forward_f_code	3 bits
0000 000	stuffing	7 bits
0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 0000 0001	slice_start_code	32 bits
0000 1	quantizer_scale	5 bits
1	macroblock_address_increment	1 bit
001	macroblock_type	3 bits
0	motion_horizontal_forward_code	1 bit
0	motion_vertical_forward_code	1 bit
0000 0001 000 (x 11)	macroblock_escape (x11)	121 bits
0000 0011 001	macroblock_address_increment	11 bits
001	macroblock_type	3 bits
0	motion_horizontal_forward_code	1 bit
0	motion_vertical_forward_code	1 bit
0000	stuffing	4 bits
	Total	256 bits

D.7 Decoding MPEG video

D.7.1 Decoding a sequence

D.7.1.1 Decoding for forward playback

At the beginning of a sequence, the decoder will decode the sequence header including the sequence parameters. If a parameter exceeds the capability of the decoder, then the decoder should report this. If the decoder determines that it can decode the bitstream, then it will set up its parameters to match those defined in the sequence header. This will include the horizontal and vertical resolutions and aspect ratio, the bit rate, and the quantization matrices.

Next the decoder will decode the group of pictures header, including the closed_gop and broken_link information, and take any appropriate action. It will decode the first picture header in the group of pictures and read the vbv_delay field. If the decoder uses the vbv_delay information to start-up decoding rather than the information in the system stream (ISO/IEC 11172-1) then it must delay displaying pictures until after a time determined by the vbv_delay information and a knowledge of the decoder's architecture.

If the closed-gop flag is 0, indicating that the group is open, and the broken_link flag is 1, then any B-pictures preceding (in display order) the first I-picture in the group cannot be decoded. The decoder may adopt one of several strategies. It may display the first I-picture during the time that the undecodable B-pictures would be displayed. This strategy maintains audio synchronization and buffer fullness. However it is likely that the broken link has occured because of post coding editing, in which case audio may be discontinuous. An alternative strategy might be to discard the B-pictures entirely, and delay decoding the I-picture until the buffer fullness is within limits.

If playback begins from a random point in the bitstream, the decoder should discard all the bits until it finds a sequence start code, a group of pictures start code, or a picture start code which introduces an I-picture. The slices and macroblocks in the picture are decoded and written into a display buffer, and perhaps into another buffer. The decoded pictures may be post processed and displayed in the order defined by the temporal reference at the picture rate defined in the sequence header.

Subsequent pictures are processed at the appropriate times to avoid buffer overflow and underflow.

D.7.1.2 Decoding for fast playback

Fast forward can be supported by D pictures. It can also be supported by an appropriate spacing of I-pictures in a sequence. For example, if I-pictures were spaced regularly every 10 pictures, then a decoder might be able to playback the sequence at 10 times the normal speed by decoding and displaying only the I-pictures. This simple concept places considerable burdens on the media and the decoder. The media must be capable of speeding up and delivering 10 times the data rate, the decoder must be capable of accepting this higher data rate and decoding the I-pictures. Since I-pictures typically require significantly more bits to code than P or B-pictures, the decoder will have to decode significantly more than 10% of the data, even if it can search for picture start codes and discard the data for P and B-pictures.

For example, a sequence might be coded as follows:

I B P B P B P B P B I B P B P B P B P B I ...

Assume that the average code size per picture is C, that each B-picture requires 0,3C, that each P-picture requires 1,5C, and that each I-picture requires 2,5C, then the I-pictures require 25% of the code for their 10% of the display time.

Another way to achieve fast forward in a constant bit rate application, is for the media itself to sort out the I-pictures and transmit them. This would allow the data rate to remain constant. Since this selection process can be made to produce a valid ISO/IEC 11172-2 bitstream, the decoder should be able to decode it. If every I-picture of the preceding example were selected, then one I-picture would be transmitted every 2.5 picture periods, and the speed up rate would be 10/2,5 = 4 times. The decoder might be able to display the I-pictures at exactly 2,5 periods, or it might alternate displays at 2 and 3 periods.

If alternate I-pictures of the preceding example were selected, then one I-picture would again be transmitted every 2,5 picture periods, but the speed up rate would be 20/2,5 = 8 times.

If one in N I-pictures of the preceding example were selected, then the speed up rate would be 10N/2,5 = 4N times.

D.7.1.3 Decoding for pause and step modes

Decoding for pause requires the decoder to be able to control the incoming bitstream, and display a decoded picture without decoding any additional pictures. If the decoder has full control over the bitstream, then it can be stopped for pause and resumed when playback resumes. If the decoder has less control, as in the case of a CD ROM, then there may be a delay before playback can be resumed.

D.7.1.4 Decoding for reverse playback

To decode a bitstream and playback in reverse, the decoder must decode each group of pictures in the forward direction, store the decoded pictures, then display them in reverse order. This places severe storage requirements on the decoder in addition to any problems in gaining access to the coded bitstream in the correct order.

To reduce decoder memory requirements, groups of pictures should be small. There is no mechanism in the syntax for the encoder to state what the decoder requirements are in order to playback in reverse.

The amount of display buffer storage may be reduced by reordering the pictures, either by having the storage unit read and transmit them in another order, or by reordering the coded pictures in a decoder buffer. To illustrate the savings, consider the following typical group of pictures:

B	B	I	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B	P	pictures in display order
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	temporal reference
I	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B	P	B	B	pictures in coded order
2	0	1	5	3	4	8	6	7	11	9	10	temporal reference
I	P	P	P	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	pictures in new order
2	5	8	11	10	9	7	6	4	3	1	0	temporal reference

Figure D.37 -- Example group of pictures

The decoder would decode the pictures in the new order, and display them in the reverse of the normal display order. Since the B-pictures are not decoded until they are ready to be displayed, the display buffer storage is minimized. The first two B-pictures, 0 and 1, would remain stored in the input buffer until the last P-picture in the previous group of pictures is decoded.

D.8 Post processing

D.8.1 Editing

Editing of a video sequence is best performed before compression, but situations arise where only the coded bitstream is available. One possible method would be to decode the bitstream, perform the required editing, and recode the bitstream. This usually leads to a loss in video quality, and it is better, if possible, to edit the coded bitstream itself.

Although editing may take several forms, the following discussion pertains only to editing at the picture level: deletion of coded video material from a bitstream, insertion of coded video material into a bitstream, or rearrangement of coded video material within a bitstream.

If editing is anticipated, e.g. clip video is provided analogous to clip art for still pictures, then the video can be encoded with well defined cutting points. These cutting points are places at which the bitstream may be broken apart or joined. Each cutting point should be followed by a closed group of pictures. This allows smooth playback after editing.

An editor must take care to ensure that the bitstream it produces is a legal bitstream. In particular it must ensure that the new bitstream complies with the requirements of the video buffering verifier. This is a difficult task and in general it will not be possible to edit together arbitrary sections of bitstreams that comply with this part of ISO/IEC 11172 to produce another bitstream that also complies with this part of ISO/IEC 11172 (see for example figure D.38).

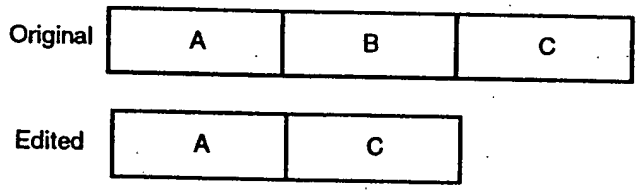


Figure D.38 -- Sequences

It may however be possible to deliberately encode bitstreams in a manner that allows some editing to occur. For instance, if all Groups of Pictures had the same number of pictures and were encoded with the same number of bits, then many of the problems of complying with the video buffering verifier would be solved.

The easiest editing task is to cut at the beginning of groups of pictures. If the group of pictures following the cut is open, which can be detected by examining the closed_gop flag in the group of pictures header, then the editor must set the broken_link bit to 1 to indicate to the decoder that the previous group of pictures cannot be used for decoding any B-pictures.

D.8.2 Resampling

The decoded bitstream may not match the picture rate or the spatial resolution of the display device. In this quite frequent situation, the decoded video must be resampled or scaled.

One example, considered under preprocessing, is the case where the decoded video has SIF resolution and must be converted to CCIR 601 resolution.

D.8.2.1 Conversion of MPEG SIF to CCIR 601 format

A SIF is converted to its corresponding CCIR 601 format by spatial upsampling. A linear phase FIR filter is applied after the insertion of zeroes between samples. A filter that can be used for upsampling the luminance is shown in figure D.39:

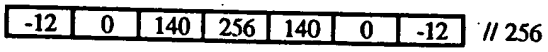


Figure D.39 -- Upsampling filter for luminance

At the end of the lines some special technique, such as replicating the last pel, must be adopted.

According to CCIR Rec. 601 the chrominance samples need to be co-sited with the luminance samples 1, 3, 5,... In order to achieve the proper location, the upsampling filter should have an even number of taps,as shown in figure D.40.

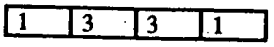
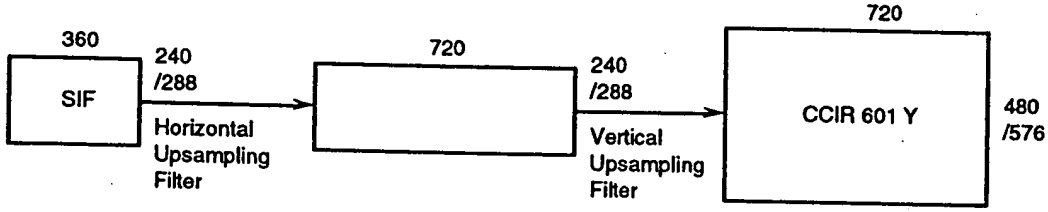
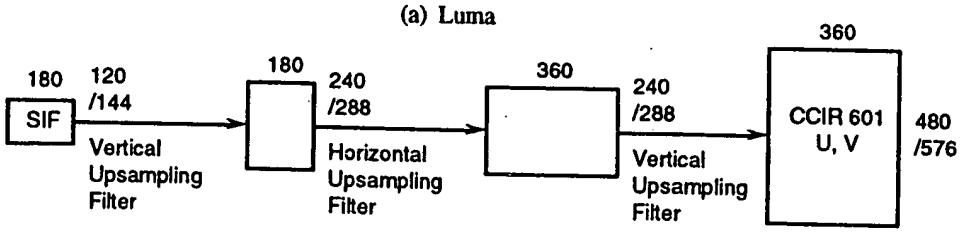


Figure D.40 -- Upsampling filter for chrominance

The SIF may be reconstructed by adding four black pels to each end of the horizontal luminance lines in the decoded bitmap, and two gray pels to each end of the horizontal chrominance lines. The luminance SIF may then be upsampled horizontally and vertically. The chrominance SIF should be upsampled once horizontally and twice vertically. This process is illustrated by the following diagram:



(a) Luma



(b) Chroma

Figure D.41 -- Simplified decoder block diagram

D.8.2.2 Temporal resampling

Since the picture rates are limited to those commonly used in the television industry, the same techniques may be applied. For example, conversion from 24 pictures/s to 60 fields/s may be achieved by the technique of 3:2 pulldown.

Video coded at 25 pictures/s can be converted to 50 fields/s by displaying the original decoded lines in the odd CCIR 601 fields, and the interpolated lines in the even fields. Video coded at 29,97 or 30 pictures/s may be converted to a field rate twice as large using the same method.

Video coded at 23,976 or 24 pictures/s may be converted to 50 fields/s by speeding it up by about 4% and decoding it as if it had been encoded at 25 pictures/s. The decoded pictures could be displayed in the odd fields, and interpolated pictures in the even fields. The audio must be maintained in synchronization, either by increasing the pitch, or by speeding it up without a pitch change.

Video coded at 23,976 or 24 pictures/s may be converted to 59,94 or 60 fields/s using the technique of 3:2 pull down.

Annex E

(informative)

Bibliography

[1] Arun N. Netravali & Barry G. Haskell *Digital Pictures, representation and compression* Plenum Press, 1988.

[2] Didier Le Gall *MPEG: A Video Compression Standard for Multimedia Applications* Trans ACM, April 1991.

[3] C Loeffler, A Ligtenberg, G S Moschytz *Practical fast 1-D DCT algorithms with 11 multiplications* Proceedings IEEE ICASSP-89, Vol. 2, pp 988-991, Feb. 1989.

[4] IEC Standard Publication 461, Second edition 1986 *Time and control code for video tape recorders.*

[5] CCITT Recommendation H.261 *Codec for audiovisual services at px64 kbit/s* Geneva, 1990.

[6] ISO/IEC DIS 10918-1 *Digital compression and coding of continuous-tone still images - Part 1: Requirements and guidelines.*

[7] E Viscito and C Gonzales *A Video Compression Algorithm with Adaptive Bit Allocation and Quantization*, Proc SPIE Visual Communications and Image Proc '91 Boston MA November 10-15 Vol 1605 205, 1991.

[8] A Puri and R Aravind *Motion Compensated Video Coding with Adaptive Perceptual Quantization*, IEEE Trans on Circuits and Systems for Video Technology, Vol 1 pp 351 Dec 1991.

Annex F

(informative)

List of patent holders

The user's attention is called to the possibility that - for some of the processes specified in this part of ISO/IEC 11172 - compliance with this International Standard may require use of an invention covered by patent rights.

By publication of this part of ISO/IEC 11172, no position is taken with respect to the validity of this claim or of any patent rights in connection therewith. However, each company listed in this annex has filed with the Information Technology Task Force (ITTF) a statement of willingness to grant a license under such rights that they hold on reasonable and nondiscriminatory terms and conditions to applicants desiring to obtain such a license.

Information regarding such patents can be obtained from :

AT&T
32 Avenue of the Americas
New York
NY 10013-2412
USA

Aware
1 Memorial Drive
Cambridge
02142 Massachusetts
USA

Bellcore
290 W Mount Pleasant Avenue
Livingston
NJ 07039
USA

The British Broadcasting Corporation
Broadcasting House
London
W1A 1AA
United Kingdom

British Telecommunications plc
Intellectual Property Unit
13th Floor
151 Gower Street
London
WC1E 6BA
United Kingdom

CCETT
4 Rue du Clos-Courtel
BP 59
F-35512
Cesson-Sevigne Cedex
France

CNET
38-40 Rue du General Leclerc
F-92131 Issy-les-Moulineaux
France

Compression Labs, Incorporated
2860 Junction Avenue
San Jose
CA 95134
USA

CSELT
Via G Reiss Romoli 274
I-10148 Torino
Italy

CompuSonics Corporation
PO Box 61017
Palo Alto
CA 94306
USA

Daimler Benz AG
PO Box 800 230
Epplestrasse 225
D-7000 Stuttgart 80
Germany

Dornier Gmbh
An der Bundesstrasse 31
D-7990 Friedrichshafen1
Germany

Fraunhofer Gesselschaft zur Foerderung der Angerwandten Forschung e.V.
Leonrodstrasse 54
8000 Muenchen 19
Germany

Hitachi Ltd
6 Kanda-Surugadai 4 chome
Chiyoda-ku
Tokyo 101
Japan

Institut für Rundfunktechnik Gmbh
Florianmühlstraße 60
8000 München 45
Germany

International Business Machines Corporation
Armonk
New York 10504
USA

KDD Corporation
2-3-2 Nishishinjuku
Shinjuku-ku
Tokyo
Japan

Licentia Patent-Verwaltungs-Gmbh
Theodor-Stern-Kai &
D-6000 Frankfurt 70
Germany

Massachusetts Institute of Technology
20 Ames Street
Cambridge
Massachusetts 02139
USA

Matsushita Electric Industrial Co. Ltd
1006 Oaza-Kadoma
Kadoma
Osaka 571
Japan

Mitsubishi Electric Corporation
2-3 Marunouchi
2-Chome
Chiyoda-Ku
Tokyo
100 Japan

NEC Corporation
7-1 Shiba 5-Chome
Minato-ku
Tokyo
Japan

Nippon Hoso Kyokai
2-2-1 Jin-nan
Shibuya-ku
Tokyo 150-01
Japan

Philips Electronics NV
Groenewoudseweg 1
5621 BA Eindhoven
The Netherlands

Pioneer Electronic Corporation
4-1 Meguro 1-Chome
Meguro-ku
Tokyo 153
Japan

Ricoh Co, Ltd
1-3-6 Nakamagome
Ohta-ku
Tokyo 143
Japan

Schawartz Engineering & Design
15 Buckland Court
San Carlos, CA 94070
USA

Sony Corporation
6-7-35 Kitashinagawa
Shinagawa-ku
Tokyo 141
Japan

Symbionics
St John's Innovation Centre
Cowley Road
Cambridge
CB4 4WS
United Kingdom

Telefunken Fernseh und Rundfunk GmbH
Gottinger Chaussee
D-3000 Hannover 91
Germany

Thomson Consumer Electronics
9, Place des Vosges
La Défense 5
92400 Courbevoie
France

Toppan Printing Co, Ltd
1-5-1 Taito
Taito-ku
Tokyo 110
Japan

Toshiba Corporation
1-1 Shibaru 1-Chome
Minato-ku
Tokyo 105
Japan

Victor Company of Japan Ltd
12 Moriya-cho 3 chome
Kanagawa-ku
Yokohama
Kanagawa 221
Japan

This page intentionally left blank